



# **Hosea**

**translationNotes**

v6

# Copyrights & Licensing

## License:

This work is made available under a [Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License](#), which means

You are free:

- Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

Under the following conditions:

- Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <http://unfoldingword.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

Use of trademarks: **unfoldingWord** is a trademark of Distant Shores Media and may not be included on any derivative works created from this content. Unaltered content from <http://unfoldingword.org> must include the **unfoldingWord** logo when distributed to others. But if you alter the content in any way, you must remove the **unfoldingWord** logo before distributing your work.

This work is still being revised, if you have comments or questions please email them to [help@door43.org](mailto:help@door43.org)

**Version:** 6

**Published:** 2017-02-22

## Table of Contents

<b>Copyrights &amp; Licensing</b> . . . . .	<b>1</b>
<b>translationNotes</b> . . . . .	<b>12</b>
Introduction to Hosea . . . . .	12
Hosea 1 General Notes . . . . .	24
Hosea 1:1-2 . . . . .	25
Hosea 1:3-5 . . . . .	27
Hosea 1:6-7 . . . . .	29
Hosea 1:8-9 . . . . .	31
Hosea 1:10-11 . . . . .	32
Hosea 2 General Notes . . . . .	34
Hosea 2:1 . . . . .	35
Hosea 2:2-3 . . . . .	36
Hosea 2:4-5 . . . . .	38
Hosea 2:6-7 . . . . .	40
Hosea 2:8-9 . . . . .	42
Hosea 2:10-11 . . . . .	44
Hosea 2:12-13 . . . . .	46
Hosea 2:14-15 . . . . .	48
Hosea 2:16-17 . . . . .	50
Hosea 2:18 . . . . .	52
Hosea 2:19-20 . . . . .	54
Hosea 2:21-22 . . . . .	56
Hosea 2:23 . . . . .	58
Hosea 3 General Notes . . . . .	60
Hosea 3:1-3 . . . . .	61
Hosea 3:4-5 . . . . .	63
Hosea 4 General Notes . . . . .	65
Hosea 4:1-2 . . . . .	66
Hosea 4:3 . . . . .	68
Hosea 4:4-5 . . . . .	69
Hosea 4:6-7 . . . . .	71
Hosea 4:8-9 . . . . .	73
Hosea 4:10 . . . . .	75
Hosea 4:11-12 . . . . .	76
Hosea 4:13-14 . . . . .	78
Hosea 4:15-16 . . . . .	80
Hosea 4:17-19 . . . . .	82
Hosea 5 General Notes . . . . .	84
Hosea 5:1-2 . . . . .	85
Hosea 5:3-4 . . . . .	87
Hosea 5:5-7 . . . . .	89

*Table of Contents*

---

Hosea 5:8-9 . . . . .	91
Hosea 5:10-11 . . . . .	93
Hosea 5:12-13 . . . . .	95
Hosea 5:14-15 . . . . .	97
Hosea 6 General Notes . . . . .	99
Hosea 6:1-3 . . . . .	100
Hosea 6:4-5 . . . . .	102
Hosea 6:6-7 . . . . .	104
Hosea 6:8-9 . . . . .	106
Hosea 6:10-11 . . . . .	108
Hosea 7 General Notes . . . . .	110
Hosea 7:1-2 . . . . .	111
Hosea 7:3-5 . . . . .	113
Hosea 7:6-7 . . . . .	115
Hosea 7:8-9 . . . . .	117
Hosea 7:10-11 . . . . .	119
Hosea 7:12-13 . . . . .	121
Hosea 7:14-15 . . . . .	123
Hosea 7:16 . . . . .	125
Hosea 8 General Notes . . . . .	127
Hosea 8:1-3 . . . . .	128
Hosea 8:4-5 . . . . .	130
Hosea 8:6-7 . . . . .	132
Hosea 8:8-10 . . . . .	134
Hosea 8:11-12 . . . . .	136
Hosea 8:13-14 . . . . .	137
Hosea 9 General Notes . . . . .	139
Hosea 9:1-2 . . . . .	140
Hosea 9:3-4 . . . . .	142
Hosea 9:5-6 . . . . .	144
Hosea 9:7 . . . . .	146
Hosea 9:8-9 . . . . .	148
Hosea 9:10 . . . . .	150
Hosea 9:11-12 . . . . .	152
Hosea 9:13-14 . . . . .	154
Hosea 9:15 . . . . .	156
Hosea 9:16-17 . . . . .	158
Hosea 10 General Notes . . . . .	160
Hosea 10:1-2 . . . . .	161
Hosea 10:3-4 . . . . .	163
Hosea 10:5-6 . . . . .	165
Hosea 10:7-8 . . . . .	167
Hosea 10:9 . . . . .	169

Hosea 10:10-11 . . . . .	171
Hosea 10:12-13 . . . . .	173
Hosea 10:14-15 . . . . .	175
Hosea 11 General Notes . . . . .	177
Hosea 11:1-2 . . . . .	178
Hosea 11:3-4 . . . . .	180
Hosea 11:5-7 . . . . .	182
Hosea 11:8-9 . . . . .	184
Hosea 11:10-11 . . . . .	186
Hosea 11:12 . . . . .	188
Hosea 12 General Notes . . . . .	189
Hosea 12:1-2 . . . . .	190
Hosea 12:3-4 . . . . .	192
Hosea 12:5-6 . . . . .	194
Hosea 12:7-8 . . . . .	196
Hosea 12:9-10 . . . . .	198
Hosea 12:11-12 . . . . .	200
Hosea 12:13-14 . . . . .	202
Hosea 13 General Notes . . . . .	204
Hosea 13:1-2 . . . . .	205
Hosea 13:3 . . . . .	207
Hosea 13:4-6 . . . . .	208
Hosea 13:7-8 . . . . .	210
Hosea 13:9-11 . . . . .	212
Hosea 13:12-13 . . . . .	214
Hosea 13:14 . . . . .	216
Hosea 13:15 . . . . .	218
Hosea 13:16 . . . . .	220
Hosea 14 General Notes . . . . .	222
Hosea 14:1-2 . . . . .	223
Hosea 14:3 . . . . .	225
Hosea 14:4-6 . . . . .	227
Hosea 14:7-8 . . . . .	229
Hosea 14:9 . . . . .	231
<b>translationQuestions . . . . .</b>	<b>233</b>
Hosea 1 . . . . .	233
Hosea 2 . . . . .	234
Hosea 3 . . . . .	236
Hosea 4 . . . . .	237
Hosea 5 . . . . .	239
Hosea 6 . . . . .	240
Hosea 7 . . . . .	241
Hosea 8 . . . . .	242

*Table of Contents*

---

Hosea 9 . . . . .	243
Hosea 10 . . . . .	245
Hosea 11 . . . . .	246
Hosea 12 . . . . .	247
Hosea 13 . . . . .	248
Hosea 14 . . . . .	250
<b>translationWords . . . . .</b>	<b>251</b>
twelve tribes of Israel . . . . .	251
accuse, accusation, accuser . . . . .	252
acknowledge . . . . .	253
Adam . . . . .	254
adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress . . . . .	255
adversary, enemy . . . . .	256
Ahaz . . . . .	257
altar . . . . .	258
angel, archangel . . . . .	259
angry, anger . . . . .	261
appoint, appointed . . . . .	262
Aram, Aramean, Aramaic . . . . .	263
Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire . . . . .	264
astray, go astray, led astray, stray . . . . .	265
Baal . . . . .	266
barley . . . . .	267
beast . . . . .	268
beg, beggar . . . . .	269
beloved . . . . .	270
Benjamin . . . . .	271
Bethel . . . . .	272
biblical time: day . . . . .	273
blood . . . . .	274
bloodshed . . . . .	275
bind, bond, bound . . . . .	276
bow, bow down . . . . .	278
bow and arrow . . . . .	279
bread . . . . .	280
brother . . . . .	281
burnt offering, offering by fire . . . . .	282
bury, buried, burial . . . . .	283
call, calling, called, call out . . . . .	284
cast out, drive out, throw out . . . . .	286
cedar . . . . .	287
chaff . . . . .	288
children, child . . . . .	289

---

compassion, compassionate . . . . .	290
conceive, conception . . . . .	291
confess, confession . . . . .	292
corrupt, corruption . . . . .	293
covenant . . . . .	294
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love . . . . .	296
cow, calf, bull, cattle . . . . .	297
crime, criminal . . . . .	298
curse, cursed . . . . .	299
cut off . . . . .	300
cypress . . . . .	301
David . . . . .	302
death, die, dead . . . . .	303
deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive . . . . .	305
declare, declaration . . . . .	306
decree . . . . .	307
defile, be defiled . . . . .	308
desert, wilderness . . . . .	309
desolate, desolation . . . . .	310
detestable, detest . . . . .	311
devastate, devastation . . . . .	312
devour . . . . .	313
discipline, self-discipline . . . . .	314
disgrace, disgraceful . . . . .	315
donkey, mule . . . . .	316
dove, pigeon . . . . .	317
eagle . . . . .	318
earth, earthly . . . . .	319
Egypt, Egyptian . . . . .	320
ephod . . . . .	321
Ephraim . . . . .	322
evil, wicked, wickedness . . . . .	323
exalt, exaltation . . . . .	325
face . . . . .	326
faithful, faithfulness . . . . .	328
false god, foreign god, god, goddess . . . . .	329
ancestor, father, forefather . . . . .	330
favor, favorable, favoritism . . . . .	331
fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh . . . . .	332
feast . . . . .	333
festival . . . . .	334
fig . . . . .	335
fire . . . . .	336

*Table of Contents*

---

firstfruits . . . . .	337
flock, herd . . . . .	338
fool, foolish, folly . . . . .	339
foreigner, foreign, alien . . . . .	340
forever . . . . .	341
forgive, forgiveness . . . . .	342
sexual immorality . . . . .	343
forsake, forsaken, forsook . . . . .	344
fountain, spring . . . . .	345
fruit, fruitful . . . . .	346
gate, gate bar . . . . .	348
Gibeah . . . . .	349
Gilead . . . . .	350
Gilgal . . . . .	351
glory, glorious . . . . .	352
God . . . . .	353
gold . . . . .	355
good, goodness . . . . .	356
grain . . . . .	358
grape . . . . .	359
guilt, guilty . . . . .	360
hades, sheol . . . . .	361
hand, right hand, to hand over . . . . .	362
harvest . . . . .	364
heal, cure . . . . .	365
heart . . . . .	366
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly . . . . .	367
heifer . . . . .	368
Hezekiah . . . . .	369
high places . . . . .	370
Holy One . . . . .	371
honor, to honor . . . . .	372
hope . . . . .	373
horse . . . . .	374
horsemen . . . . .	375
Hosea . . . . .	376
house . . . . .	377
household . . . . .	378
house of God, Yahweh's house . . . . .	379
idol, idolatrous . . . . .	380
image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure . . . . .	381
incense . . . . .	382
iniquity . . . . .	383



Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel . . . . .	384
I, Yahweh; me, Yahweh . . . . .	385
Jacob, Israel . . . . .	386
Jehu . . . . .	387
Jeroboam . . . . .	388
Jezreel . . . . .	389
Joash . . . . .	390
Jotham . . . . .	391
joy, joyful . . . . .	392
Judah . . . . .	393
judge, judgment . . . . .	394
just, justice, justly . . . . .	396
kingdom . . . . .	397
kingdom of Israel . . . . .	399
Judah, kingdom of Judah . . . . .	400
king . . . . .	402
kiss . . . . .	403
know, knowledge, make known . . . . .	404
lamb, Lamb of God . . . . .	405
last day, last days, latter days . . . . .	407
law, principle . . . . .	408
law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh . . . . .	409
Lebanon . . . . .	411
leopard . . . . .	412
life, live, living, alive . . . . .	413
lion . . . . .	415
Lord . . . . .	416
love . . . . .	417
lover . . . . .	419
Maker . . . . .	420
Memphis . . . . .	421
mercy, merciful . . . . .	422
messenger . . . . .	424
Mizpah . . . . .	425
mock, ridicule, scoff at . . . . .	426
Most High . . . . .	427
mourn, mourning . . . . .	428
multiply . . . . .	429
name . . . . .	430
nation . . . . .	431
new moon . . . . .	432
oak . . . . .	433
oath, swear, swear by . . . . .	434

*Table of Contents*

---

obey, obedient, obedience . . . . .	435
oil . . . . .	436
olive . . . . .	437
oppress, oppression, oppressor . . . . .	438
palace . . . . .	439
parable . . . . .	440
people group, peoples, the people, a people . . . . .	441
people of God, my people . . . . .	443
pillar, column . . . . .	444
plague . . . . .	445
power, powers . . . . .	446
precious . . . . .	447
priest, priesthood . . . . .	448
prince, princess . . . . .	450
promise . . . . .	451
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess . . . . .	452
prostitute, harlot, whore . . . . .	454
proud, pride, prideful . . . . .	455
punish, punishment . . . . .	456
Ramah . . . . .	458
reap, reaper . . . . .	459
rebel, rebellious, rebellion . . . . .	460
reject . . . . .	461
rejoice . . . . .	462
repent, repentance . . . . .	463
restore, restoration . . . . .	464
righteous, righteousness . . . . .	465
ruler, rulers, rule . . . . .	466
Sabbath . . . . .	467
sacrifice, offering . . . . .	468
salvation . . . . .	470
Samaria, Samaritan . . . . .	471
save, safe . . . . .	472
Savior . . . . .	474
seek, sought . . . . .	475
shame, shameful, ashamed . . . . .	476
Shechem . . . . .	477
sheep, ram, ewe . . . . .	478
silver . . . . .	479
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning . . . . .	480
sister . . . . .	482
slaughter . . . . .	483
snare, trap . . . . .	484

son, son of . . . . .	485
sow, sower, plant . . . . .	487
splendor . . . . .	488
stiff-necked, stubborn . . . . .	489
storehouse . . . . .	490
strong drink . . . . .	491
stronghold, fortress, fortified . . . . .	492
stumble . . . . .	493
sword . . . . .	494
tent . . . . .	495
testimony, testify . . . . .	496
thorn, thistle . . . . .	497
thresh, threshing . . . . .	498
true, truth, come true . . . . .	499
trumpet . . . . .	501
trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness . . . . .	502
turn, turn away, turn back . . . . .	503
Tyre, Tyrians . . . . .	504
unclean . . . . .	505
understand, understanding . . . . .	506
unfaithful, unfaithfulness . . . . .	507
unjust, unjustly, injustice . . . . .	508
Uzziah, Azariah . . . . .	509
vine . . . . .	510
vineyard . . . . .	511
vision . . . . .	512
walk . . . . .	513
waste, wasteland . . . . .	514
watch, watchman . . . . .	515
water, waters . . . . .	516
well, cistern . . . . .	517
wine, wineskin, new wine . . . . .	518
winepress . . . . .	519
wise, wisdom . . . . .	520
woe . . . . .	521
womb . . . . .	522
word . . . . .	523
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture . . . . .	524
works, deeds, work, acts . . . . .	526
worship . . . . .	527
wrath, fury . . . . .	528
Yahweh . . . . .	529
Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host . . . . .	531

yoke . . . . .	532
<b>translationAcademy . . . . .</b>	<b>533</b>
First, Second or Third Person . . . . .	533
Abstract Nouns . . . . .	535
Active or Passive . . . . .	538
Apostrophe . . . . .	541
Doublet . . . . .	543
Ellipsis . . . . .	545
Euphemism . . . . .	547
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information . . . . .	549
Generic Noun Phrases . . . . .	551
Hyperbole . . . . .	553
Idiom . . . . .	556
Metaphor . . . . .	558
Metonymy . . . . .	563
Parables . . . . .	565
Parallelism . . . . .	568
Personification . . . . .	570
Direct and Indirect Quotations . . . . .	572
Rhetorical Question . . . . .	574
Simile . . . . .	577
Synecdoche . . . . .	580
Biblical Volume . . . . .	582
How to Translate Names . . . . .	586
Numbers . . . . .	590
Ordinal Numbers . . . . .	593
Symbolic Action . . . . .	596
Translate Unknowns . . . . .	599

## translationNotes

### Introduction to Hosea

#### Part 1: General Introduction

##### Outline of Hosea

1. God tells Hosea to marry Gomer, as a picture of Yahweh's relationship with Israel (1:1–3:5)
2. Israel's betrayals, wanderings, and sins; Yahweh's appeals and pleas to return to him (4:1–7:3)
3. Literary devices to explain the conflict between Yahweh and Israel
  - a) Similes, oven, cake, dove, bow (7:4–16)
  - b) Israel's open lies and rebellion (8:1–14)
  - c) Prediction of the end of Israel (9:1–17)
  - d) Similes, grapes, vine, calf, lion, children, birds, and doves (10:1–11:11)
  - e) Destruction caused by Israel's sins and betrayals and broken alliances (11:12–12:1)
  - f) Remembering Israel's history (12:2–13:16)
  - g) Idolatry (13:1–8)
4. Israel is hostile to Yahweh (13:9–16)
5. Yahweh's last appeals to Israel (14:1–9)

#### What is the Book of Hosea about?

Hosea lived in the northern kingdom of Israel, which he often called Ephraim or Samaria. He lived in the period of time just before Assyria conquered the northern kingdom.

Hosea begins with the events of 753 BC, just before the death of Jeroboam II, when the kingdom of Israel was at its most powerful. Despite its prosperity, the kingdom of Israel was spiritually . Hosea predicts the demise of the kingdom of Israel and witnesses its destruction. The challenges and difficulties that Hosea was instructed to endure were unlike the those faced by any other Old Testament prophet. (See: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#))

#### How should the title of this book be translated?

“The Book of Hosea” may also be called the “The book about Hosea” or “The sayings of Hosea.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Who wrote the Book of Hosea?

Hosea, son of Beeri, transmitted the messages in the book from God. Hosea prophesied at the same time as Amos, Isaiah, and Micah. They followed the earlier prophets, Obadiah, Joel, and Jonah. Hosea lived in the northern kingdom, probably in the city of Samaria. In Hosea 7:5, he

refers to the king of the northern kingdom as “our king.” The name Hosea means “salvation.” (See: [salvation](#))

## Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

### Why did God command Hosea to marry a prostitute?

Hosea’s marriage to the prostitute Gomer is a type of metaphor for the kingdom of Israel’s relationship to Yahweh. Israel was unfaithful to Yahweh and broke the covenant with him, as a woman who is unfaithful to her husband and breaks her marriage agreement with him. (See: [Metaphor](#), [unfaithful](#), [unfaithfulness](#) and [covenant](#))

### What is a lawsuit?

Many cultures have a process for resolving disputes through the use of courts. These legal disputes are called lawsuits. The Book of Hosea contains a number of legal terms, because it pictures Yahweh’s accusations against Israel as if a husband were accusing his wife of being unfaithful to him. So part of the book follows the form of a lawsuit. There is a problem that is identified (4:1), someone is accused (4:4), someone is found guilty (4:15), and punishment follows (5:1).

### What was the religious environment in the kingdom of Israel?

While Israel was supposed to worship Yahweh alone, they combined the worship of Yahweh with the worship of the Canaanite gods, including the idol named Baal. This was a major cause of God’s judgment upon the kingdom of Israel. (See: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#) and [judge, judgment](#)).

## Part 3: Important Translation Issues

### What does the phrase “the declaration of Yahweh” mean?

The prophet uses the phrase “the declaration of Yahweh” to mark a message as truly coming from God.

### Why are English translations of Hosea very different?

Hosea 4–14 has many problems of interpretation. Some phrases in Hosea are beyond the current understanding we have of the Hebrew language. Many English translations give very different translations for these difficult sections.

### What does the term “Israel” mean in Hosea?

In Hosea, “Israel” is only used in reference to the northern kingdom of [kingdom of Israel](#). It is not used in reference to southern kingdom or to the two kingdoms together. (See: [kingdom of Israel](#))

**List of translationAcademy Topics in Hosea**

- \* **First, Second or Third Person** is found in: 04:15, 08:04, 09:05
- \* **Abstract Nouns** is found in: 04:01, 11:08, 13:14, 14:03
- \* **Active or Passive** is found in: 01:10, 02:01, 02:08, 04:03, 04:06, 06:10, 08:04, 10:05, 10:07, 11:01, 12:05, 13:03, 13:16
- \* **Apostrophe** is found in: 10:07
- \* **Doublet** is found in: 05:08, 09:05, 09:07, 10:05, 12:01, 12:07
- \* **Ellipsis** is found in: 13:01, 13:07
- \* **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information** is found in: 01:10, 04:06, 04:08, 07:01, 12:03, 13:01
- \* **Generic Noun Phrases** is found in: 09:08
- \* **Hyperbole** is found in: 08:11
- \* **Idiom** is found in: 01:01, 05:05, 06:01, 07:03, 08:06, 10:01, 10:03, 10:09
- \* **Metaphor** is found in: 01:01, 01:03, 02:02, 02:04, 02:06, 02:10, 02:12, 02:14, 02:16, 02:19, 02:21, 02:23, 04:01, 04:04, 04:11, 04:13, 04:15, 04:17, 05:01, 05:10, 05:12, 05:14, 06:04, 06:10, 07:01, 07:03, 07:06, 07:08, 07:10, 07:12, 07:14, 08:01, 08:04, 08:06, 08:08, 09:03, 09:05, 09:08, 09:11, 09:16, 10:01, 10:03, 10:09, 10:10, 10:12, 11:01, 11:03, 11:10, 12:01, 12:07, 12:13, 13:01, 13:04, 13:12, 13:14, 13:15, 14:01, 14:04, 14:07, 14:09
- \* **Metonymy** is found in: 01:03, 02:04, 02:08, 02:10, 02:16, 02:18, 03:04, 04:06, 04:17, 05:08, 06:06, 06:08, 06:10, 07:08, 07:16, 08:04, 09:03, 09:05, 09:08, 09:13, 09:15, 10:14, 11:05, 11:08, 11:12, 12:01, 12:09, 12:13, 13:01, 13:16, 14:01
- \* **Parallelism** is found in: 05:03, 05:10, 06:01, 09:05, 09:07, 09:10, 11:03, 11:12, 12:07, 13:12
- \* **Personification** is found in: 02:21, 04:11, 05:05, 07:10, 09:01, 13:14
- \* **Rhetorical Question** is found in: 06:04, 08:04, 09:05, 09:13, 10:03, 10:09, 11:05, 11:08, 13:09, 13:14, 14:07, 14:09
- \* **Simile** is found in: 01:10, 02:02, 04:15, 05:03, 05:10, 05:12, 05:14, 06:01, 06:04, 07:03, 07:06, 07:10, 07:12, 07:16, 08:08, 09:03, 09:11, 09:13, 10:03, 10:07, 11:03, 11:10, 12:11, 13:03, 13:07, 14:04, 14:07
- \* **Synecdoche** is found in: 07:01, 10:01, 13:04, 14:03
- \* **Biblical Volume** is found in: 03:01
- \* **How to Translate Names** is found in: 01:01, 01:03, 01:06, 01:08, 02:23, 04:15, 05:01, 05:08, 09:10, 10:05, 10:14
- \* **Numbers** is found in: 03:01, 06:01, 08:11
- \* **Symbolic Action** is found in: 03:01

**List of translationWords in Hosea**

- \* twelve tribes of Israel is found in: 05:08
- \* accuse, accusation, accuser is found in: 04:04
- \* acknowledge is found in: 05:14
- \* Adam is found in: 06:06
- \* adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress is found in: 02:02, 03:01, 04:01, 04:13, 04:15, 04:17, 05:03, 07:03
- \* adversary, enemy is found in: 08:01, 13:15
- \* Ahaz is found in: 01:01
- \* altar is found in: 08:11, 10:01, 10:07, 12:11
- \* angel, archangel is found in: 12:03
- \* angry, anger is found in: 11:08, 12:13
- \* Aram, Aramean, Aramaic is found in: 12:11
- \* Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire is found in: 05:12, 07:10, 08:08, 09:03, 10:05, 11:05, 11:10, 12:01, 14:03
- \* astray, go astray, led astray, stray is found in: 07:12
- \* Baal is found in: 02:08, 02:12, 02:16, 11:01, 13:01
- \* barley is found in: 03:01
- \* beast is found in: 02:18, 04:03, 13:07
- \* beg, beggar is found in: 12:03
- \* beloved is found in: 09:16
- \* Benjamin is found in: 05:08
- \* Bethel is found in: 10:14, 12:03
- \* biblical time: day is found in: 06:01
- \* blood is found in: 06:08, 12:13
- \* bloodshed is found in: 01:03, 04:01
- \* bind, bond, bound is found in: 04:01, 10:10
- \* bow, bow down is found in: 05:10
- \* bow and arrow is found in: 01:03, 01:06, 02:18
- \* bread is found in: 02:04
- \* brother is found in: 02:01, 12:03, 13:15
- \* burnt offering, offering by fire is found in: 06:06



- \* bury, buried, burial is found in: 09:05
- \* call, calling, called, call out is found in: 02:16, 11:01
- \* cast out, drive out, throw out is found in: 09:15
- \* cedar is found in: 14:04
- \* chaff is found in: 13:03
- \* children, child is found in: 02:04, 04:06, 09:11, 09:13, 09:16, 10:14
- \* compassion, compassionate is found in: 02:01, 11:08, 13:14, 14:03
- \* conceive, conception is found in: 02:04
- \* corrupt, corruption is found in: 09:08
- \* covenant is found in: 02:18, 06:06, 08:01, 10:03, 12:01
- \* covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love is found in: 02:19, 04:01, 10:12, 12:05
- \* cow, calf, bull, cattle is found in: 08:06, 10:05, 13:01
- \* crime, criminal is found in: 06:08
- \* curse, cursed is found in: 04:01
- \* cut off is found in: 08:04, 10:14
- \* cypress is found in: 14:07
- \* David is found in: 03:04
- \* death, die, dead is found in: 02:02, 09:16, 13:01, 13:14
- \* deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive is found in: 10:01, 10:12, 11:12
- \* declare, declaration is found in: 02:12, 02:16, 02:21, 05:08, 11:10
- \* decree is found in: 06:04
- \* defile, be defiled is found in: 05:03, 09:03
- \* desert, wilderness is found in: 02:02, 02:14, 09:10, 13:04, 13:15
- \* desolate, desolation is found in: 05:08
- \* detestable, detest is found in: 09:10
- \* devastate, devastation is found in: 07:12
- \* devour is found in: 05:05, 08:06, 13:07
- \* discipline, self-discipline is found in: 10:10
- \* disgrace, disgraceful is found in: 10:05
- \* donkey, mule is found in: 08:08
- \* dove, pigeon is found in: 07:10, 11:10

- \* eagle is found in: 08:01
- \* earth, earthly is found in: 02:21
- \* Egypt, Egyptian is found in: 02:14, 07:10, 07:16, 08:13, 09:03, 09:05, 11:01, 11:05, 11:10, 12:01, 12:09, 12:13, 13:04
- \* ephod is found in: 03:04
- \* Ephraim is found in: 04:17, 05:03, 05:05, 05:08, 05:10, 05:12, 05:14, 06:04, 06:10, 07:01, 07:08, 07:10, 08:08, 08:11, 09:03, 09:08, 09:11, 09:13, 09:16, 10:05, 10:10, 11:03, 11:08, 11:12, 12:01, 12:07, 12:13, 13:01, 13:12, 13:15, 14:07
- \* evil, wicked, wickedness is found in: 04:08, 07:01, 07:03, 07:14, 09:15, 10:07, 10:12, 10:14, 12:11
- \* exalt, exaltation is found in: 13:01
- \* face is found in: 05:14
- \* faithful, faithfulness is found in: 02:19, 06:04, 11:12
- \* false god, foreign god, god, goddess is found in: 14:03
- \* ancestor, father, forefather is found in: 09:10
- \* favor, favorable, favoritism is found in: 12:03
- \* fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh is found in: 10:03
- \* feast is found in: 02:10, 02:12
- \* festival is found in: 02:10, 05:05, 09:05, 12:09
- \* fig is found in: 02:12, 09:10
- \* fire is found in: 08:13
- \* firstfruits is found in: 09:10
- \* flock, herd is found in: 05:05, 12:11
- \* fool, foolish, folly is found in: 09:07
- \* foreigner, foreign, alien is found in: 08:06
- \* forever is found in: 02:19
- \* forgive, forgiveness is found in: 01:06
- \* sexual immorality is found in: 04:11, 04:13
- \* forsake, forsaken, forsook is found in: 01:01, 09:01
- \* fountain, spring is found in: 13:15
- \* fruit, fruitful is found in: 09:16, 10:01, 10:12, 14:07
- \* gate, gate bar is found in: 11:05
- \* Gibeah is found in: 05:08, 09:08, 10:09

- \* Gilead is found in: 06:08, 12:11
- \* Gilgal is found in: 04:15, 09:15
- \* glory, glorious is found in: 09:11
- \* God is found in: 01:06, 01:10, 02:23, 03:04, 04:01, 04:11, 05:03, 06:06, 07:10, 08:01, 08:06, 09:01, 09:08, 09:16, 11:08, 11:12, 12:03, 12:05, 12:09, 13:04, 13:16, 14:01
- \* gold is found in: 02:08
- \* good, goodness is found in: 03:04
- \* grain is found in: 02:08, 02:21, 07:14, 08:06, 10:10, 14:07
- \* grape is found in: 09:10
- \* guilt, guilty is found in: 04:15, 05:05, 05:14, 10:01, 13:01, 13:12, 13:16
- \* hades, sheol is found in: 13:14
- \* hand, right hand, to hand over is found in: 02:10, 12:09, 14:03
- \* harvest is found in: 02:08, 06:10
- \* heal, cure is found in: 05:12, 06:01, 07:01, 14:04
- \* heart is found in: 07:01, 07:06, 07:14, 10:01, 13:04
- \* heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly is found in: 02:21
- \* heifer is found in: 04:15, 10:10
- \* Hezekiah is found in: 01:01
- \* high places is found in: 10:07
- \* Holy One is found in: 11:08, 11:12
- \* honor, to honor is found in: 04:06
- \* hope is found in: 02:14
- \* horse is found in: 01:06, 14:03
- \* horsemen is found in: 01:06
- \* Hosea is found in: 01:01, 01:03, 01:06
- \* house is found in: 01:03, 06:10, 09:15
- \* household is found in: 03:04
- \* house of God, Yahweh's house is found in: 09:03, 09:08
- \* idol, idolatrous is found in: 03:04, 04:11, 04:17, 05:10, 08:04, 09:10, 10:05, 11:01, 13:01, 14:07
- \* image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure is found in: 13:01
- \* incense is found in: 02:12, 04:13, 11:01
- \* iniquity is found in: 08:13, 09:07, 09:08, 10:10, 12:07, 13:12, 14:01

- \* Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel is found in: 01:01, 01:03, 01:06, 01:10, 03:01, 03:04, 04:01, 04:15, 05:01, 05:03, 05:05, 06:10, 07:01, 07:10, 08:01, 08:06, 08:08, 08:13, 09:01, 09:07, 09:10, 10:01, 10:05, 10:07, 10:09, 10:14, 11:01, 11:08, 11:12, 12:13, 13:01, 13:09, 14:01, 14:04
- \* I, Yahweh; me, Yahweh is found in: 11:10, 11:12
- \* Jacob, Israel is found in: 10:10, 12:01, 12:03, 12:11
- \* Jehu is found in: 01:03
- \* Jeroboam is found in: 01:01
- \* Jezreel is found in: 01:03, 01:10, 02:21
- \* Joash is found in: 01:01
- \* Jotham is found in: 01:01
- \* joy, joyful is found in: 09:01
- \* Judah is found in: 01:01, 01:06, 01:10, 04:15, 05:10, 06:04, 06:10, 08:13, 10:10, 11:12, 12:01
- \* judge, judgment is found in: 05:01, 05:10
- \* just, justice, justly is found in: 02:19, 10:03, 12:05
- \* king is found in: 01:01, 03:04, 05:01, 05:12, 07:03, 08:04, 08:08, 10:03, 10:05, 10:07, 10:14, 13:09
- \* kingdom is found in: 01:03
- \* Judah, kingdom of Judah is found in: 05:05, 05:12, 05:14
- \* kiss is found in: 13:01
- \* know, knowledge, make known is found in: 04:01, 05:03, 06:01, 06:06, 08:04, 09:07, 13:04, 14:09
- \* lamb, Lamb of God is found in: 04:15
- \* last day, last days, latter days is found in: 03:04
- \* law, principle is found in: 08:11
- \* law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh is found in: 04:06, 08:01
- \* Lebanon is found in: 14:04, 14:07
- \* leopard is found in: 13:07
- \* life, live, living, alive is found in: 01:10, 03:01, 04:03, 04:15, 11:10, 12:09
- \* lion is found in: 05:14, 11:10, 13:07
- \* Lord is found in: 12:13
- \* love is found in: 03:01, 04:17, 09:10, 09:15, 11:01, 11:03, 14:04
- \* lover is found in: 02:04, 02:06, 02:10, 02:12, 08:08
- \* Maker is found in: 08:13
- \* Memphis is found in: 09:05

- \* **mercy, merciful** is found in: 01:06, 02:04, 02:19, 02:23
- \* **messenger** is found in: 05:12
- \* **Mizpah** is found in: 05:01
- \* **mock, ridicule, scoff at** is found in: 07:03, 07:16
- \* **Most High** is found in: 07:16
- \* **mourn, mourning** is found in: 09:03, 10:05
- \* **multiply** is found in: 04:06
- \* **name** is found in: 01:03, 01:06, 01:08, 02:16
- \* **nation** is found in: 08:08, 09:16, 10:10
- \* **new moon** is found in: 02:10, 05:05
- \* **oak** is found in: 04:13
- \* **oath, swear, swear by** is found in: 04:15, 10:03
- \* **obey, obedient, obedience** is found in: 09:16
- \* **oil** is found in: 02:04, 02:08, 02:21, 12:01
- \* **olive** is found in: 12:01, 14:04
- \* **oppress, oppression, oppressor** is found in: 08:08
- \* **palace** is found in: 08:13
- \* **parable** is found in: 12:09
- \* **people group, peoples, the people, a people** is found in: 02:01, 03:04, 04:01, 04:13, 04:15, 06:10, 10:14, 14:07
- \* **people of God, my people** is found in: 01:08, 01:10, 04:06, 04:08, 04:11, 11:05, 11:10
- \* **pillar, column** is found in: 03:04, 10:01
- \* **plague** is found in: 13:14
- \* **power, powers** is found in: 13:14
- \* **precious** is found in: 13:15
- \* **priest, priesthood** is found in: 04:04, 04:06, 04:08, 05:01, 06:08, 10:05
- \* **prince, princess** is found in: 03:04, 08:04, 08:08, 13:09
- \* **promise** is found in: 02:19
- \* **prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess** is found in: 04:04, 04:11, 06:04, 09:07, 09:08, 12:09, 12:13
- \* **prostitute, harlot, whore** is found in: 01:01, 02:02, 02:04, 03:01, 04:10, 04:13, 05:03, 06:10, 09:01
- \* **proud, pride, prideful** is found in: 05:05, 07:10

- \* punish, punishment is found in: 01:03, 04:08, 05:01, 05:08, 07:12, 08:13, 09:07, 09:08, 12:01
- \* Ramah is found in: 05:08
- \* reap, reaper is found in: 10:12
- \* rebel, rebellious, rebellion is found in: 05:01, 07:12, 08:01, 09:15, 13:16, 14:09
- \* reject is found in: 04:06, 09:16
- \* rejoice is found in: 09:01, 10:05
- \* restore, restoration is found in: 06:10
- \* righteous, righteousness is found in: 02:19, 10:12, 14:09
- \* ruler, rulers, rule is found in: 04:17, 11:05, 13:09
- \* Sabbath is found in: 02:10
- \* sacrifice, offering is found in: 03:04, 04:13, 04:17, 06:06, 08:13, 09:03, 11:01, 12:11, 13:01
- \* Samaria, Samaritan is found in: 07:01, 08:04, 08:06, 10:05, 10:07, 13:16
- \* save, safe is found in: 01:06, 13:09, 14:03
- \* Savior is found in: 13:04
- \* seek, sought is found in: 05:14, 07:10
- \* shame, shameful, ashamed is found in: 02:04, 04:06, 04:17, 06:08, 09:10, 10:05
- \* Shechem is found in: 06:08
- \* sheep, ram, ewe is found in: 12:11
- \* silver is found in: 02:08, 03:01, 09:05
- \* sin, sinful, sinner, sinning is found in: 04:06, 04:08, 07:01, 08:11, 08:13, 09:08, 09:15, 10:07, 10:09, 12:07, 13:01
- \* sister is found in: 02:01
- \* slaughter is found in: 05:01, 09:13
- \* snare, trap is found in: 09:08
- \* son, son of is found in: 01:03, 01:08, 11:01, 13:12
- \* sow, sower, plant is found in: 10:12
- \* splendor is found in: 10:05
- \* stiff-necked, stubborn is found in: 04:15
- \* storehouse is found in: 13:15
- \* strong drink is found in: 04:17
- \* stronghold, fortress, fortified is found in: 08:13, 10:14
- \* stumble is found in: 04:04, 05:05, 14:09

- \* sword is found in: 01:06, 02:18, 07:16, 13:16
- \* tent is found in: 09:05, 12:09
- \* testimony, testify is found in: 05:05, 07:10
- \* thorn, thistle is found in: 10:07
- \* thresh, threshing is found in: 09:01, 10:10, 13:03
- \* true, truth, come true is found in: 04:01
- \* trumpet is found in: 05:08, 08:01
- \* trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness is found in: 10:12
- \* turn, turn away, turn back is found in: 05:03, 07:10, 07:14, 11:01, 11:05, 14:04
- \* Tyre, Tyrians is found in: 09:13
- \* unclean is found in: 06:10, 09:03
- \* understand, understanding is found in: 04:13, 14:09
- \* unfaithful, unfaithfulness is found in: 05:05, 06:06, 09:01
- \* unjust, unjustly, injustice is found in: 10:12
- \* Uzziah, Azariah is found in: 01:01
- \* vine is found in: 02:12, 10:01, 14:07
- \* vineyard is found in: 02:14
- \* vision is found in: 12:09
- \* walk is found in: 11:03, 11:10, 14:09
- \* waste, wasteland is found in: 08:08
- \* watch, watchman is found in: 09:08
- \* water, waters is found in: 02:04, 05:10, 06:01, 13:15
- \* well, cistern is found in: 13:15
- \* wine, wineskin, new wine is found in: 02:08, 02:21, 04:11, 07:03, 09:01, 09:03, 14:07
- \* winepress is found in: 09:01
- \* wise, wisdom is found in: 13:12, 14:09
- \* woe is found in: 07:12, 09:11
- \* womb is found in: 09:13, 12:03, 13:12
- \* word is found in: 10:03, 14:01
- \* word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture is found in: 01:01, 04:01
- \* works, deeds, work, acts is found in: 04:08, 05:03, 07:01, 09:15, 12:07, 14:03

\* **worship** is found in: 13:01

\* **wrath, fury** is found in: 05:10, 11:08, 13:09

\* **Yahweh** is found in: 01:01, 01:03, 01:06, 01:08, 02:12, 02:16, 02:19, 02:21, 03:01, 03:04, 04:01, 04:10, 04:15, 05:03, 05:05, 06:01, 07:10, 08:01, 08:13, 09:03, 09:05, 09:13, 10:01, 10:03, 10:12, 12:01, 12:05, 12:09, 12:13, 13:04, 13:15, 14:01, 14:09

\* **Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host** is found in: 12:05

\* **yoke** is found in: 10:10, 11:03



## **Hosea 1 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 1:2-11, which is a series of quotation. Chapter 1 and 2 is a single series forming one narrative.

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Hosea's marriage**

God does not approve of prostitution, but he told Hosea to marry a prostitute so that the message of Israel's unfaithfulness would be shown to the people. (See: [unfaithful](#), [unfaithfulness](#))

Hosea's marriage to Gomer is a metaphor for the kingdom of Israel's relationship to Yahweh. Israel was unfaithful to Yahweh and broke the covenant with him. Gomer was a woman who was unfaithful to her husband and broke her marriage agreement with him. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [covenant](#))

### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

#### **Metaphor**

Hosea 1-4 is controlled by a metaphor that Hosea lived out. He was personifying the relationship between Israel and Yahweh. Hosea played the part of Yahweh, and Gomer played the part of Israel.

#### **Links:**

- [Hosea 01:01 Notes](#)
- [Introduction to Hosea](#)

**Hosea 1:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh gave Hosea these messages during the years that Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah were kings of Judah, and when Jeroboam son of Jehoash was king of Israel.

<sup>2</sup> When Yahweh spoke for the first time through the prophet Hosea, he said, “Go and marry a prostitute. She will have children because she has given herself to other men. When you marry a prostitute, this will show how my people have been so shamefully unfaithful to me. It will show them how they have left me, their God.”

**ULB:**

**1** <sup>1</sup> This is the word of Yahweh that came to Hosea son of Beeri in the days of Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz and Hezekiah, kings of Judah, and in the days of Jeroboam son of Joash, king of Israel. <sup>2</sup> When Yahweh spoke at first through Hosea, he said to him,

”Go, take for yourself a wife who is a prostitute.

She will have children who are the result of her prostitution.

For the land is committing great prostitution

by forsaking Yahweh.”

**translationWords:**

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Hosea
- Uzziah, Azariah
- Jotham
- Ahaz
- Hezekiah
- king
- Judah
- Jeroboam
- Joash
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Yahweh
- prostitute, harlot, whore
- forsake, forsaken, forsook

**translationNotes:**

- **the word of Yahweh that came** - This is an idiom. AT: “the word that Yahweh God spoke” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Beerli** - This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Uzziah ... Jotham ... Ahaz ... Hezekiah ... Jeroboam ... Joash** - The events in this book happened during the time of these kings. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Yahweh** - This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.
- **great prostitution** - Here “prostitution” represents the people being unfaithful to God. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 01 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 01 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 1:3-5****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> So Hosea married Gomer, daughter of Diblaim. She became pregnant and gave birth to a son.

<sup>4</sup> Yahweh said to Hosea, "Give your baby the name Jezreel, because I will soon punish the family members of King Jehu for the murders that he committed in the city of Jezreel. I will also bring the kingdom of Israel to an end. <sup>5</sup> On that day I will destroy the fighting strength of the army of Israel, there in the Valley of Jezreel."

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> So Hosea went and married Gomer daughter of Diblaim, and she conceived and bore him a son.

<sup>4</sup> Yahweh said to Hosea,

    "Call his name Jezreel.

    For in a little while

    I will punish the house of Jehu

    for the bloodshed at Jezreel,

    and I will put an end

    to the kingdom of the house of Israel.

<sup>5</sup> It will happen on the day

    that I break the bow of Israel

    in the Valley of Jezreel."

**translationWords:**

- Hosea
- son, son of
- Yahweh
- name
- Jezreel
- punish, punishment
- house
- Jehu
- bloodshed
- kingdom
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- bow and arrow

**translationNotes:**

- **Gomer ... Diblaim** - These are names of people. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the house of Jehu** - Here “house” means “family,” including Jehu’s descendants. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the house of Israel** - This expression refers to kingdom of Israel. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the bow of Israel** - Here “bow” refers to the power of the army. AT: “the military power of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 01 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 01 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 1:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> Gomer soon became pregnant again, and this time she gave birth to a daughter. Then Yahweh spoke to him, "Give her the name Lo Ruhamah, which means 'no mercy,' because I will no longer have any mercy for the people of Israel, and I will not forgive them for even one sin they have committed. <sup>7</sup> But I will have mercy on the people of Judah. I will save them—but not by deadly weapons, the bow, the sword, or battle. I will not save them by armies or by strong horses and those who ride on them. Instead, I, Yahweh myself, will save them."

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> Gomer conceived again and bore a daughter. Then Yahweh said to Hosea,

    "Call her name Lo Ruhamah,  
    for I will no longer have mercy  
    on the house of Israel,  
    that I should forgive them at all.

<sup>7</sup> Yet I will have mercy on the house of Judah,  
    and I will save them by myself, Yahweh their God.  
    I will not save them  
    by bow, sword, battle, horses, or horsemen."

**translationWords:**

- Yahweh
- Hosea
- name
- mercy, merciful
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- forgive, forgiveness
- Judah
- God
- save, safe
- bow and arrow
- sword
- horse
- horsemen

**translationNotes:**

- **Lo Ruhamah** - This name means “no mercy.” The translator may choose to represent this meaning as the name. AT: “No Mercy” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 01 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 01 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 1:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> After Gomer had weaned Lo Ruhamah, she became pregnant again and gave birth to a son. <sup>9</sup> Yahweh said "Give him the name Lo Ammi, which means 'not my people,' because you, O Israel, are not my people—and I will no longer protect you as your God.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> Now after Gomer had weaned Lo Ruhamah, she conceived and bore another son. <sup>9</sup> Then Yahweh said,

"Call his name Lo Ammi,  
for you are not my people,  
and I am not your God.

**translationWords:**

- [son, son of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **Lo Ruhamah** - This name means "no mercy." The translator may choose to represent this meaning as the name. AT: "No Mercy" See how you translated this in [1:6](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Lo Ammi** - This name means "not my people." The translator may choose to represent this meaning as the name. AT: "Not My People" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 01 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 01 Translation Questions](#)



**Hosea 1:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> One day in the future, the people of Israel will be as numerous as the grains of sand by the sea. No one will be able to count them. I have said to Israel, ‘You are not my people,’—but one day I will say to them, ‘You are the people whom I will protect and love.’ <sup>11</sup> On that day I, Yahweh, will gather all the people of Judah and bring them together with all the people of Israel. They will choose from among themselves a single leader, and they will go out of that land in which they were held as exiles. On that day they will say, ‘Great is the day of Jezreel!’ (Jezreel means, ‘God plants his people in his land.’)

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> Yet the number of the people of Israel  
 will be like the sand of the seashore,  
 which cannot be measured or counted.  
 It will be that where it was said to them,  
 ‘You are not my people,’  
 it will be said to them,  
 ‘You are people of the living God.’  
<sup>11</sup> The people of Judah and the people of Israel  
 will be gathered together.  
 They will appoint one leader for themselves,  
 and they will go up from the land,  
 for great will be the day of Jezreel.

**translationWords:**

- people of God, my people
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- life, live, living, alive
- God
- Judah
- appoint, appointed
- Jezreel

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking to Hosea.
- **like the sand of the seashore** - This emphasizes the great number of Israelites. (See: [Simile](#))
- **which cannot be measured or counted** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “which no one can measure or count” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **It will be that where it was said to them** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Where God said to them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **where it was said to them** - This expression probably refers to Jezreel, the city where crimes had been committed by kings of Israel, and which was a symbol of God’s punishment of them.
- **it will be said to them** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God will say to them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **will be gathered together** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God will gather them together” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **go up from the land** - This expression might refer to the land where the people of Israel were in captivity (see UDB).
- **the day of Jezreel** - This refers to the time when God will put his people back in the land of Israel. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 01 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 01 Translation Questions](#)

## Hosea 2 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of this which is a series of quotation. Hosea 1-2 is a single series forming one narrative.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphor

Many relationships are used in this chapter that are metaphors for the relationship between Israel and her God (brother, sister, husband, wife, mother and children are examples). (See: [Metaphor](#)).

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

This chapter creates an abrupt change of address. The prophet is now addressing the children directly in the first few verses, but the whole chapter is written against Gomer as an illustration of Israel as an adulteress people. God has used Gomer as an illustration to teach the people of Israel about how they should be faithful to him. (See: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#) and [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#))

#### Links:

- [Hosea 02:01 Notes](#)

**Hosea 2:1****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Call your male fellow Israelites, ‘You are Yahweh’s people,’ and call your female fellow Israelites, ‘Yahweh has been kind to you.’”

**ULB:**

2 <sup>1</sup> Say to your brothers, ‘My people!’  
and to your sisters, ‘You have been shown compassion.’”

**translationWords:**

- [brother](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [sister](#)
- [compassion, compassionate](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **Connecting Statement:** - Yahweh is speaking to Hosea.
- **My people!** - This exclamation may be presented as a statement. AT: “You are my people!”
- **You have been shown compassion** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh has shown you compassion” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **compassion** - “kindness” or “mercy”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 02 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 02 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 2:2-3****UDB:**

<sup>2</sup> Yahweh said to me, "I want you to accuse Israel, who is like a mother to you, of being like an unfaithful wife to me.

This nation is no longer like a wife to me,  
and I am no longer like a husband to her.

Tell Israel that they must stop acting like a prostitute; she must stop worshipping idols.

Israel must stop worshipping idols. She must stop acting like a woman who leaves her husband and goes to other men.

<sup>3</sup> If she does not stop,

I will take her clothes off her and make her naked like she was when she was born.

I will make her like the barren wilderness—dry and lifeless; I will make her like a woman dying from thirst in the desert.

**ULB:**

<sup>2</sup> Bring a lawsuit against your mother, bring a lawsuit,  
for she is not my wife,  
and neither am I her husband.

Let her put away her prostitution from before herself,  
and her acts of adultery from between her breasts.

<sup>3</sup> If not, I will strip her naked  
and show her nakedness as on the day that she was born.  
I will make her like the wilderness,  
like a parched land,  
and I will make her die from thirst.

**translationWords:**

- prostitute, harlot, whore
- adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress
- desert, wilderness
- death, die, dead

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking to Hosea.
- **lawsuit** - This is a complaint by one person against another person in a court of law.
- **your mother** - Here “mother” refers to the nation of Israel. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **for she is not my wife** - Yahweh is stating that Israel, spoken of here as a woman, is no longer acting like a wife to Yahweh. Instead Israel has turned away from following and worshipping him. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **and neither am I her husband** - Yahweh can no longer be in relationship with the nation of Israel as a husband would be to his wife. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **and her acts of adultery** - A wife who is adulterous leaves her husband to sleep with another man. This is how Israel was acting toward Yahweh. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **from between her breasts** - This imagery suggests that Israel is relying on the idols and not Yahweh. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I will strip her naked and show her nakedness as on the day that she was born** - Yahweh will no longer protect and provide for Israel because the nation has turned away from him. In Israel, husbands were obliged by law to provide clothes for their wives. Not to do so was a sign that a man was rejecting his wife. The full meaning of this may be made clear. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **I will make her like the wilderness** - Yahweh will change Israel to resemble the wilderness, which is a region that is bare and unproductive. (See: [Simile](#))
- **and I will make her die from thirst** - Here “thirst” refers to the need to worship and rely on Yahweh, not idols, or Israel will not be able to survive as a nation. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 02 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 02 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 2:4-5****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> I will have no pity on her people, the people of Israel,  
because their nation is like a prostitute.

<sup>5</sup> Israel is like a prostitute;

she is like a woman who has had these children from doing shameful things with other men.

Israel decided to hurry after these idols whom she loved, to worship other gods.

She thought that it was those gods who gave her bread and water.

She thought that it was those gods who gave her wool, linen, and olive oil, and also wine to drink.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> I will not have any mercy on her children,  
for they are children of prostitution.

<sup>5</sup> For their mother has been a prostitute,  
and she who conceived them has acted shamefully.

She said, "I will go after my lovers,  
for they give me my bread and water,  
my wool and flax,  
my oil and drink."

**translationWords:**

- mercy, merciful
- children, child
- prostitute, harlot, whore
- conceive, conception
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- lover
- bread
- water, waters
- oil

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking to Hosea.
- **for they are children of prostitution** - The Israelites are acting like they do not belong to Yahweh. Just as their parents did not worship God, Neither do they. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **For their mother has been a prostitute** - The previous generation who sought out other gods were considered prostitutes for they were unfaithful to Yahweh. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I will go after my lovers, for they give me my bread and water, my wool and flax, my oil and drink** - Here “my lovers” refers to Baal and other false gods, whom Israel has chosen to worship instead of Yahweh. The list of things are essential items that allow the people to live. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 02 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 02 Translation Questions](#)



**Hosea 2:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> So I will block Israel's road with thornbushes,

and I will build a wall around her,

so that she cannot find the path to take.

<sup>7</sup> Israel will run after her idols

but she will not find them.

She will search for her false gods,

but she will not find them.

Then, like a prostitute who wants to return to her husband, she will say to me, 'I will go back to you, the one I loved at first,

because my life was better with you than it is now.'

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> Therefore I will build up a hedge to block her way with thorns.

I will build up a wall against her

so she cannot find her way.

<sup>7</sup> She will pursue her lovers,

but she will not overtake them.

She will seek them,

but she will not find them.

Then she will say,

"I will return to my first husband,

for it was better for me then than it is now."

**translationWords:**

- lover

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is talking to Hosea.
- **Therefore I will build up a hedge to block her way with thorns. I will build up a wall against her so she cannot find her way** - This passage indicates that Yahweh will prevent his people from finding success and prosperity, because they continue to worship idols. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Parallelism](#))
- **Then she will say, “I will return to my first husband, for it was better for me then than it is now”** - Israel will return to Yahweh not because of their love for him, but because they are disappointed by their worship of Baal. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 02 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 02 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 2:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> The people will say this, because they did not know that it was I, Yahweh, who had given them their grain, new wine, and olive oil.

It was I who had given them much silver and gold so they would become wealthy.

But then they made all that gold and silver into objects to use in worshipping the idol Baal.

<sup>9</sup> Therefore I will take away from Israel all the grain I gave them.

When the wheat is ready for harvest, I will keep them from getting it.

The new wine that I gave them, I will take it away.

I will take away from them all the wool and linen I gave them to make clothes for themselves,

the clothes that covered their nakedness.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> For she had not known that it was I who gave her the grain, the new wine and the oil, and who lavished on her silver and gold, which they then used for Baal.

<sup>9</sup> So I will take back her grain at harvest time, and my new wine in its season.

I will take back my wool and flax that were used to cover her nakedness.

**translationWords:**

- grain
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- oil
- silver
- gold
- Baal
- harvest

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking to Hosea.
- **I will take back my wool and flax that were used to cover her nakedness** - This probably means that Israel's harvests and flocks will fail. Yahweh will remove his blessings from Israel, and the people will be left alone and in danger of attack. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **were used to cover her nakedness** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "that the people used to clothe themselves" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 02 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 02 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 2:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> I will treat Israel as a man treats his wife when he finds her with other men.

I will strip her naked in front of her lovers.

No one will be able rescue her from what I will do to her.

<sup>11</sup> I will make the people in Israel stop holding their celebrations;

they will stop holding their festivals every year.

They will no longer celebrate the beginning of every month.

They will no longer celebrate the Sabbath days.

They will no longer be able to hold the festivals scheduled throughout the year.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> Then I will strip her naked in the sight of her lovers,

and no one will rescue her out of my hand.

<sup>11</sup> I will also cause all her celebrations to cease—

her feasts, her new moon celebrations, her Sabbaths, and all her appointed festivals.

**translationWords:**

- lover
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- feast
- new moon
- Sabbath
- appoint, appointed
- festival

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking to Hosea.
- **Then I will strip her naked in the sight of her lovers** - This means God will humiliate the people of Israel in front of the other nations nearby. See how you translated this in 2:3. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **no one will rescue her out of my hand** - No one will try to help Israel. Here “hand” refers to God’s power to punish. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 02 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 02 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 2:12-13****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> I will destroy all of Israel's grapevines and fig trees.

This is because Israel is like a woman who says, 'These were the things that my lovers gave me in payment.'

I, Yahweh, will turn those places into a forest, a thicket in which no vines can grow,

and where wild animals will devour any fruit that grows there.'

<sup>13</sup> I will punish this woman named Israel for all the times that she burned incense to worship the Baal idols.

She decorated herself with rings and jewelry, as a prostitute would adorn herself for her lovers.

She used to follow her lovers—like Israel has gone after the Baals—those false gods that she worshiped.

And she forgot about me." This is what Yahweh says.

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> "I will destroy her vines and her fig trees,

of which she has said,

'These are the wages that my lovers gave me.'

I will make them a forest,

and the animals of the field will eat them.

<sup>13</sup> I will punish her for the feast days of the Baals,

when she burned incense to them,

when she adorned herself with her rings and jewelry,

and she went after her lovers and forgot me."

This is the declaration of Yahweh.

**translationWords:**

- [vine](#)
- [fig](#)
- [lover](#)
- [Baal](#)
- [feast](#)
- [incense](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking to Hosea about what he will do to Israel.
- **These are the wages that my lovers gave me** - This refers to payment that Israel received from the false gods or Baals. This direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. AT: “that these were the wages that her lovers had given to her” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))
- **make them a forest** - Yahweh will destroy the vineyards and fruit trees by allowing other trees and weeds to grow among them. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **declaration of Yahweh** - “what Yahweh has declared” or “what Yahweh has solemnly said”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 02 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 02 Translation Questions](#)



**Hosea 2:14-15****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> "I will lead her into the wilderness and tell her that I love her.

I will persuade her to love me again. <sup>15</sup> I will give her vineyards back to her once more,

and in the Valley of Achor I will cause her to hope once more.

She will answer me with love and delight, as it was back in the first days when we first loved each other—

when I set her free, and she came up out of Egypt.

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> So I am going to win her back. I will bring her into the wilderness and speak tenderly to her.

<sup>15</sup> I will give her back her vineyards, and the Valley of Achor as a door of hope.

She will answer me there as she did in the days of her youth, as in the days that she came out of the land of Egypt.

**translationWords:**

- desert, wilderness
- vineyard
- hope
- Egypt, Egyptian

**translationNotes:**

- **Connecting Statement:** - Yahweh is speaking about Israel.
- **So I am going to win her back** - "I, Yahweh, will bring her back to me"
- **the Valley of Achor as a door of hope** - As Yahweh lead Israel out of Egypt, he will lead Israel to the Valley of Achor so that Israel will hope again in Yahweh. The Valley of Achor was the place where the people of Israel stoned Achan to death by God's command, because Achan had disobeyed God's instructions. The full meaning of this can be made explicit. (See Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

- **She will answer me there as she did in the days of her youth, as in the days that she came out of the land of Egypt** - Yahweh hopes that the nation of Israel will repent and again choose to worship him as their God. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **She will answer** - Some modern versions understand the Hebrew word to mean “She will sing.”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 02 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 02 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 2:16-17****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> At that time,

Israel will call me, ‘My Husband,’ as a woman would say to her human husband.

She will no longer call out to a god, ‘My Baal,’ but she will call out to me as ‘My Husband.’

<sup>17</sup> I will not allow Israel to speak the names of the images of Baal that she used to worship.

My people will forget the names of those Baals and their idols, and my people Israel will never worship them again.

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> “It will be in that day”—this is the declaration of Yahweh—

”that you will call me, ‘My husband,’

and you will no longer call me, ‘My Baal.’

<sup>17</sup> For I will remove the names of the Baals from her mouth; their names will not be remembered anymore.”

**translationWords:**

- declare, declaration
- Yahweh
- call, calling, called, call out
- Baal
- name

**translationNotes:**

- **It will be in that day** - This refers to the day when Israel chooses to worship only Yahweh.
- **the declaration of Yahweh** - “what Yahweh has declared” or “what Yahweh has solemnly said.” See how you translated this in [2:13](#).
- **My husband** - This means the people of Israel will love and be faithful to Yahweh just as a wife is to a husband. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **My Baal** - “Baal” means “master” and also refers to the false god that the Canaanites worship. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **For I will remove the names of the Baals from her mouth** - The Israelites will not speak the names of Baal and the idols again. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 02 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 02 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 2:18****UDB:**

<sup>18</sup> At that time I will make a covenant for them:

it will be with all the wild animals and birds,  
and even with the little animals that crawl along the ground.  
They will never harm my people again.

I will promise to remove all the weapons that are used for fighting battles,  
the bows and arrows, and the swords, and every war, I will take  
them all away and destroy all of them.

And I will let all of my people rest in peace;  
they will be not be afraid anymore.

**ULB:**

<sup>18</sup> "On that day I will make a covenant for them  
with the beasts in the fields,  
with the birds in the sky,  
and with the crawling things on the ground.

I will drive away the bow, the sword, and the battle from the land,  
and I will make you lie down in safety.

**translationWords:**

- covenant
- beast
- bow and arrow
- sword

**translationNotes:**

- **Connecting Statement:** - Yahweh is speaking to Hosea about what he will do to Israel.
- **On that day** - This phrase is used to talk about a future restoration between Israel and Yahweh.
- **I will make a covenant for them** - Yahweh's new covenant will include peace for the animals.

- **I will drive away the bow, the sword, and the battle from the land, and I will make you lie down in safety** - Yahweh will keep Israel's enemies away from them, there will be no more war, the people will be safe. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **lie down in safety** - This expression refers to living in safety. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 02 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 02 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 2:19-20****UDB:**

<sup>19</sup> You will be like my wife forever, Israel.

I will promise myself to you, by doing what is right, and by loving what is just.

I promise to love you and to show you kindness even when you do not deserve it.

<sup>20</sup> I will keep my promise to you, Israel. I will never lie to you; and you will come to know me—my name is Yahweh.

**ULB:**

<sup>19</sup> I will promise to be your husband forever.

I will promise to be your husband in righteousness, justice, covenant faithfulness, and mercy.

<sup>20</sup> I will promise to be your husband in faithfulness, and you will know me, Yahweh.

**translationWords:**

- promise
- forever
- righteous, righteousness
- just, justice, justly
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love
- mercy, merciful
- faithful, faithfulness
- Yahweh

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking to Hosea about what he will do for Israel.
- **I will promise to be your husband forever** - Yahweh will be like the husband, and Israel will be like Yahweh's wife. (See: **Metaphor**)

- **I will promise to be your husband in faithfulness** - Yahweh will be faithful to his covenant with Israel.
- **husband in faithfulness** - “faithful husband”
- **and you will know me, Yahweh** - Here “know” means to acknowledge Yahweh as their God and to be faithful to him.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 02 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 02 Translation Questions](#)



**Hosea 2:21-22****UDB:**

<sup>21</sup> At that time,

I will help you,” says Yahweh.

”I will give a command to the sky,

and the sky will pour out rain onto the ground.

<sup>22</sup> And the ground will provide grain, new wine and olive trees, and they will grow for the people of Israel.

**ULB:**

<sup>21</sup> On that day,

I will answer”—this is the declaration of Yahweh.

”I will answer the heavens,

and they will answer the earth.

<sup>22</sup> The earth will answer the grain, the new wine and the oil,  
and they will answer Jezreel.

**translationWords:**

- declare, declaration
- Yahweh
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- earth, earthly
- grain
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- oil
- Jezreel

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking to Hosea about what he will do for Israel.
- **the declaration of Yahweh** - “what Yahweh has declared” or “what Yahweh has solemnly said.” See how you translated this in [2:13](#).

- **The earth will answer the grain, the new wine and the oil, and they will answer Jezreel**  
- The land will meet the need for grain, new wine, and olive oil. These things will also meet the needs of Jezreel. The land and these products are spoken of as if they were people who could meet the needs of others. (See: [Personification](#))
- **Jezreel** - Here the name of this valley stands for all the people of Israel. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 02 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 02 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 2:23****UDB:**

<sup>23</sup> At that time, I will take care of the Israelite people

as a farmer plants his own land and takes care of his crops.

I will show my love to those people whom I called ‘Not my People’.

And those whom I called ‘Not my People’,

I will now call by a new name: ‘You are my People’.

They will say to me, ‘You are our God.’”

**ULB:**

<sup>23</sup> I will plant her for myself in the land,

and I will have mercy on Lo Ruhamah.

I will say to Lo Ammi,

‘You are Ammi Attah,’

and they will say to me, ‘You are my God.’”

**translationWords:**

- [mercy, merciful](#)
- [God](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking to Hosea about what he will do for Israel.
- **I will plant her for myself in the land** - When God makes his people safe and prosperous in their land again, they are spoken of if they were agricultural crops. AT: “I will take care of the Israelite people as a farmer plants his crops and takes care of them” (UDB) (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Lo Ruhamah** - This name means “no mercy.” The translator may choose to represent this meaning as the name. See how you translated this in [1:6](#). AT: “No Mercy” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Lo Ammi** - This name means “not my people.” The translator may choose to represent this meaning as the name. See how you translated this in [1:9](#). AT: “Not My People” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Ammi Attah** - This name means “you are my people.” The translator may choose to represent this meaning as the name. AT: “You Are My People” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 02 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 02 Translation Questions](#)

## **Hosea 3 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter focus on the meaning of the illustration of Hosea's marriage. It is a very short chapter written in prose to show the truth of Israel's relationship with Yahweh. After bearing a number of children for Hosea, Gomer leaves him and prostitutes herself with other men showing little to no regard for their marriage covenant. (See: [covenant](#))

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Metaphor**

This chapter contains a continuation of the metaphor played in chapter 2. Hosea is told to go and buy his wife out of slavery. Gomer must have been captured and held as a slave due to her adulterous activity. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress](#))

#### **Links:**

- [Hosea 03:01 Notes](#)

**Hosea 3:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Then Yahweh said to me, “Go and love a woman, even though she is loved by another man, and she is also unfaithful to her husband. You will be like me, because I love the people of Israel, even though they worship other gods and eat raisin cakes in their honor.”

<sup>2</sup> Even though she was a slave, owned by another person, I bought her for 170 grams of silver, and 330 liters of barley grain. <sup>3</sup> Then I said to her, “You will live with me from now on. You will no longer be a prostitute who sleeps with various men. You will not belong to any other man, only to me, and I will be faithful to you and live with you for the rest of my life.”

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> <sup>1</sup> Yahweh said to me, “Go again, love a woman, loved by her husband, but who is an adulteress. Love her just as I, Yahweh, love the people of Israel, although they turn to other gods and love raisin cakes.” <sup>2</sup> So I bought her for myself for fifteen pieces of silver and a homer and a lethek of barley. <sup>3</sup> I said to her, “You must live with me many days. You will not be a prostitute or belong to any other man. In the same way, I will be with you.”

**translationWords:**

- Yahweh
- love
- adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- silver
- barley
- life, live, living, alive
- prostitute, harlot, whore

**translationNotes:**

- **Go again, love a woman, loved by her husband, but who is an adulteress** - This refers back to 1:2. Yahweh again tells Hosea to love an adulterous woman.
- **Love her just as I, Yahweh, love the people of Israel** - By loving the adulterous woman, Hosea will be an example of Yahweh’s love for Israel. (See: **Symbolic Action**)
- **they turn to other gods and love raisin cakes** - People ate raisin or fig cakes during festivals where they worshiped false gods.
- **fifteen pieces of silver and a homer and a lethek of barley** - This was the price to buy a slave.
- **fifteen pieces** - “15 pieces” (See: **Numbers**)

- **a homer and a letheke** - “a homer and a half of a homer” (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 03 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 03 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 3:4-5****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> When I do these things, this is to show that the people of Israel will live for a long time and not have any king ruling over them. They will have no prince, no sacrifices or pillars set up for worship, ephods or idols in their houses. <sup>5</sup> After some time, the people of Israel will return to Yahweh; they will hope that he will receive them back. They will hope to have a descendant of David for their king again. In the later time, they will come to Yahweh to honor him and tremble before him because of his goodness to them.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> For the people of Israel will live for many days without a king, prince, sacrifice, stone pillar, ephod or household idols. <sup>5</sup> Afterward the people of Israel will return and seek Yahweh their God and David their king, and in the last days, they will come trembling before Yahweh and his goodness.

**translationWords:**

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- king
- prince, princess
- sacrifice, offering
- pillar, column
- ephod
- household
- idol, idolatrous
- Yahweh
- God
- David
- last day, last days, latter days
- good, goodness

**translationNotes:**

- **For the people of Israel will live for many days without a king, prince, sacrifice, stone pillar, ephod or household idols** - Just as Hosea lived without his wife because she committed adultery, Israel will live without a king and without worshiping God, because they committed idolatry.
- **seek Yahweh their God** - Here “seek” means they are asking God to accept them and their worship.



- **David their king** - Here “David” represents all the descendants of David. AT: “a descendant of David to be their king” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **in the last days** - Here “last days” refers to a period of time in the future. AT: “in the future” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **they will come trembling before Yahweh and his goodness** - Here “trembling” represents feelings of awe and humility. AT: “they will come back to Yahweh and will humble themselves, honor him, and ask for his blessings” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 03 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 03 Translation Questions](#)

## Hosea 4 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The author stops using the metaphor of a husband/wife relationship and begins using a new illustration using lawsuits. God is suing the people of Israel because of all the wrong they have done. (See: [Metaphor](#)).

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Lawsuits

Lawsuits are special cases where people go to court when they have a legal issue to resolve between them. Normally, one party is accusing another party of having done wrong.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metonymy

Metonymy is used in the first few verses of this chapter. Metonymy is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. Bloodshed is associated with murder. Stumbling represents sinning. (See: [Metonymy](#) and [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)).

#### Links:

- [Hosea 04:01 Notes](#)

**Hosea 4:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Listen to the message Yahweh has for you.

“You people of Israel, Yahweh is accusing you, you who live in this place.”

He says, “I cannot find anyone here who tells the truth.

I cannot see anyone who loves me.

None of you can honestly say that he knows me.

<sup>2</sup> You curse and lie, you kill and steal, and you commit adultery.

You have broken every law,

and you commit one murder after another.

**ULB:**

4 <sup>1</sup> Hear the word of Yahweh, you people of Israel.

Yahweh has a lawsuit against the inhabitants of the land,

because there is no truthfulness or covenantal faithfulness, no knowledge of God in the land.

<sup>2</sup> There is cursing, lying, killing, stealing and adultery.

The people have broken all bounds, and bloodshed comes after bloodshed.

**translationWords:**

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Yahweh
- true, truth, come true
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love
- know, knowledge, make known
- God
- curse, cursed
- adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress
- bind, bond, bound
- bloodshed

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - This chapter begins Yahweh's argument against the unfaithful Israelites.
- **Yahweh has a lawsuit against the inhabitants of the land** - Yahweh stating that the people of Israel have sinned against him and broken his covenant is spoken of as if Yahweh were accusing them in court. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **lawsuit** - This is a complaint by one person against another person in a court of law. See how you translated this in [2:2](#).
- **The people have broken all bounds** - Here "bounds" stands for the limits of what the law allows. AT: "The people have disobeyed the law in every possible way" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **bloodshed comes after bloodshed** - Here "bloodshed" stands for "murder" which often involves making the victim bleed. AT: "you commit one murder after another" (UDB) (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 04 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 04 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 4:3****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> Because of what the people are doing, the land is now a wilderness.

Every creature that lives here is dying,  
from the animals that live in the fields,  
to the birds that fly in the sky;  
even the fish in the sea, they are also dying.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> So the land is drying up,  
and everyone living in it is wasting away;  
the beasts in the fields and the birds in the sky,  
even the fish in the sea, are being taken away.

**translationWords:**

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [beast](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **So the land is drying up** - This expression refers to drought, when no rain falls for a long time.
- **wasting away** - becoming weak and dying because of sickness or lack of food
- **are being taken away** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “are dying” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 04 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 04 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 4:4-5****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> But you must not accuse anyone else for this trouble.

You must not allow anyone to correct another person; no one has that right, because everyone is guilty.

And I am also accusing the priests. <sup>5</sup> You priests sin during the day and the prophets with you sin at night.

I promise you, I will destroy Israel, who is like a mother to you.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> But do not allow anyone to bring a lawsuit;

do not let anyone accuse anyone else.

For it is you, the priests, whom I am accusing.

<sup>5</sup> You priests will stumble during the day; the prophets will also stumble with you by night, and I will destroy your mother.

**translationWords:**

- **accuse, accusation, accuser**
- **priest, priesthood**
- **stumble**
- **prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess**

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking about Israel.
- **lawsuit** - a complaint by one person against another person in a court of law
- **do not let anyone accuse anyone else** - No one should accuse another person of anything because everyone is guilty of something.
- **You priests will stumble** - Here “stumble” means to disobey God or even to stop trusting him. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **I will destroy your mother** - Here “mother” refers to the nation of Israel. See how you translated this in **2:2**. (See: **Metaphor**)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 04 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 04 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 4:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> My people are perishing because you priests have refused to understand me.

And why do you understand me so little? Because you have rejected the things I have instructed you to do.

So I am rejecting you from being priests to me.

Look at what you have forgotten: You have forgotten the instructions that I, your God, gave to you.

Because you forgot me, I will forget your children.

<sup>7</sup> The more numerous you priests become,

the more you do the things that I have forbidden.

You have abandoned me in order to become shameful.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> My people are being destroyed because of the lack of knowledge.

Because you priests have rejected knowledge,

I will also reject you as priests to me.

Because you have forgotten my law, although I am your God,

I also will forget your children.

<sup>7</sup> The more the priests multiplied,

the more they sinned against me.

They exchanged their honor for shame.

**translationWords:**

- people of God, my people
- reject
- priest, priesthood
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- children, child
- multiply
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- honor, to honor
- shame, shameful, ashamed



**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - In 4:6, Yahweh is talking to the priests about the people of Israel. But in 4:7, he is talking about the priests, not to them. It is possible for the translator to follow the example of the UDB, which portrays Yahweh as talking to the priests also in 4:7.
- **My people are being destroyed because of the lack of knowledge** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “My people are perishing because you, the priests, have not properly taught them about me so that they will obey me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **knowledge** - Here “knowledge” refers to the knowledge of God. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **They exchanged their honor for shame** - Possible meanings are 1) “honor” is a metonym that represents Yahweh, and “shame” is a metonym that represents idols. AT: “They have stopped worshiping me, their honorable God, and now worship shameful idols” or 2) some Bible versions translate this as “I will exchange their honor for shame.” This means Yahweh will take away the things which the priests honor and cause the priests to be ashamed. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 04 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 04 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 4:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> When other people sin, they bring sacrifices to me, some of which you eat.

So you want the people to sin more and more.

<sup>9</sup> I will punish you priests just as I punish the people.

I will punish all of you for your behavior;

I will pay you all back for all the wicked deeds you have done.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> They feed on the sin of my people;

they are greedy for more of their wickedness.

<sup>9</sup> It will be the same for the people as for the priests:

I will punish them all for their practices;

I will repay them for their deeds.

**translationWords:**

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- people of God, my people
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- priest, priesthood
- punish, punishment
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- works, deeds, work, acts

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh continues speaking about the priests.
- **They feed on the sin of my people** - When people sinned, they would offer sacrifices so God would forgive them. The priests were allowed to eat these sacrifices. The priests eating these sacrifices for sin is spoken of as if they would actually feed on the people's sins. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Metaphor](#))

- **they are greedy for more of their wickedness** - The priests want the people to sin more so that the people will offer more sacrifices that the priests may eat. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **It will be the same for the people as for the priests** - “The people and the priests will be punished in the same way”
- **their practices** - “their habits” or “their conduct”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 04 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 04 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 4:10****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> You all will eat, but you will never get enough. You will always be hungry.

They will continue to sleep with other women, but the women will not conceive,

because you have all abandoned me, Yahweh.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> They will eat but not have enough;  
they will commit prostitution but not increase,  
because they have gone far away from Yahweh.

**translationWords:**

- prostitute, harlot, whore
- Yahweh

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is talking about Israel.
- **but not increase** - “but not have children”
- **they have gone far away** - The people have stopped worshiping and following God.
- **from Yahweh** - The translator is free to change “Yahweh” to “me,” because Yahweh is the speaker. Also see UDB.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 04 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 04 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 4:11-12****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> You love to do forbidden sexual acts,

and to drink wine and new wine.

All these things have made it impossible for you to know right from wrong.

<sup>12</sup> My own people pray to an idol made from a piece of wood.

They ask their walking staffs to tell them which way they should go!

They are always wanting to sin in sexual ways, so they have stopped obeying me, the God whom they should worship.

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> They love sexual promiscuity, wine, and new wine, which have taken away their understanding.

<sup>12</sup> My people consult their wooden idols,  
and their walking sticks give them prophecies.

For a mind of promiscuity has misled them,  
and they have acted as prostitutes instead of being faithful to their God.

**translationWords:**

- sexual immorality
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- people of God, my people
- idol, idolatrous
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- God

**translationNotes:**

- **Connecting Statement:** - Yahweh is talking about Israel.

- **sexual promiscuity, wine, and new wine, which have taken away their understanding** - The people of Israel are pursuing sex outside of marriage and drinking too much wine. In doing these activities they have forgotten Yahweh's commands. These actions are spoken of here as if they were someone who could prevent other people from understanding the importance of obeying Yahweh. (See: [Personification](#))
- **their walking sticks give them prophecies** - Idol worshipers used walking sticks to help them predict the future. The walking sticks are spoken of here as if they were people who spoke prophecies. (See: [Personification](#))
- **a mind of promiscuity has misled them** - Worshiping the idols and sleeping with the temple prostitutes has developed in the people of Israel the desire to always sin against Yahweh in these ways. Here "mind" is spoken of as if it were a separate person who was able to convince the people to disobey Yahweh. (See: [Personification](#))
- **has misled** - has convinced the people to sin (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 04 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 04 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 4:13-14****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> They worship other gods in the places on the tops of the mountains where they have set up idols. They burn offerings to the idols up on those hills—

in all the places where they worship those idols—under the oak trees, poplar trees, and the terebinth trees—

because these trees give good shade.

Following your example, your daughters decided to become prostitutes, and your daughters-in-law committed adultery.

<sup>14</sup> But I will not punish the women for turning to prostitution, or your daughters-in-law when they commit adultery.

It is the men who are doing the very same thing!

The men sleep with prostitutes,

and they offer sacrifices in the houses of idols where there are prostitutes.

It is true: “A people who have not lived as they were taught to live, will come to destruction.”

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> They sacrifice on the tops of the mountains and burn incense on the hills, under oaks, poplars and terebinths, because the shade is good.

So your daughters commit sexual immorality, and your daughters-in-law commit adultery.

<sup>14</sup> I will not punish your daughters when they choose to commit sexual immorality,

nor your daughters-in-law when they commit adultery.

For the men also give themselves to the prostitutes,

and they offer sacrifices so they can commit immoral acts with sacred prostitutes.

So this people who does not understand will be thrown down.

**translationWords:**

- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [incense](#)
- [oak](#)
- [sexual immorality](#)
- [adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress](#)
- [prostitute, harlot, whore](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [understand, understanding](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is talking about Israel.
- **on the tops of the mountains ... on the hills** - It was common for the people to set up idols in these places, often called “high places” in the Old Testament.
- **sacred prostitutes** - These were women who had sexual relations with men who came to worship certain idols. This was viewed as a sacred action in honor of the false gods.
- **So this people who does not understand will be thrown down** - Yahweh will destroy the nation of Israel because they do not understand or obey God’s commandments. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 04 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 04 Translation Questions](#)



**Hosea 4:15-16****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> Israel, you have left me and gone to idols.

But I hope that Judah will not do the same thing.

You people of Judah, do not go to Gilgal. Do not go up to Beth Aven to worship idols there.

Do not make solemn oaths, calling on me to make good on your promises, adding to your vows the words, 'As Yahweh lives!' <sup>16</sup> Israel is as stubborn as a young cow.

Can I now feed them as if they were little lambs in a meadow?

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> Though you, Israel, have committed adultery, may Judah not become guilty.

Do not go to Gilgal, you people;  
do not go up to Beth Aven,  
and do not swear, saying, "As Yahweh lives."

<sup>16</sup> For Israel has behaved stubbornly, like a stubborn heifer.

How can Yahweh bring them to pasture like lambs in a meadow?

**translationWords:**

- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress
- Judah
- guilt, guilty
- Gilgal
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- oath, swear, swear by
- Yahweh
- life, live, living, alive
- stiff-necked, stubborn
- heifer
- lamb, Lamb of God

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is talking about Judah and Israel.
- **may Judah not become guilty** - God knows how sinful Israel has become and does not want Judah to do the same thing.
- **Do not go to Gilgal, you people; do not go up to Beth Aven** - The people of Judah are being warned not to go to the cities of Gilgal or Beth Aven to worship idols in those places. Gilgal was once a place where Yahweh had been worshiped, but it had become a place of idol worship.
- **Beth Aven** - This was a city on the border between the northern kingdom of Israel and the tribe of Benjamin in the southern kingdom. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **like a stubborn heifer** - Israel is compared to a young cow that will not obey its master. (See: [Simile](#))
- **How can Yahweh bring them to pasture like lambs in a meadow?** - Yahweh uses a question to emphasize that he cannot continue to take care of the people because they are stubborn. Yahweh no longer taking care of his people is spoken of as if he were a shepherd that could not take his lambs into the field to eat because they are stubborn. AT: “Yahweh will not shepherd a rebellious people.” or “Therefore Yahweh will not continue to take care of them.” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **How can Yahweh** - Here Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person. It can be stated in the first person. AT: “How can I” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 04 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 04 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 4:17-19****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> Ephraim has gone to join idols.

Leave those people alone! <sup>18</sup> When they have finished drinking all their alcoholic drinks

then they will commit even more sexual sins.

Their rulers love to do these shameful things. <sup>19</sup> Someone will attack them; he will be like a whirlwind that lifts them up and carries them away to another place.

Only then will they be ashamed because they gave offerings to the idols.”

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> Ephraim united himself with idols;

leave him alone.

<sup>18</sup> Even when their strong drink is gone,

they continue to commit adultery;

her rulers dearly love their shame.

<sup>19</sup> The wind will wrap her up in its wings;

and they will be ashamed because of their sacrifices.

**translationWords:**

- Ephraim
- idol, idolatrous
- strong drink
- adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress
- ruler, rulers, rule
- love
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- sacrifice, offering

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is talking about Israel.

- **Ephraim united himself with idols; leave him alone** - Here “Ephraim” refers to the people in the northern kingdom of Israel. They chose to worship idols, instead of Yahweh. Yahweh is commanding Hosea to not try to correct them. The people of Israel will not listen. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **her rulers dearly love their shame** - The rulers are not ashamed of what they are doing when they worship idols and turn against Yahweh.
- **The wind will wrap her up in its wings** - Here “wind” represents God’s judgment and anger against the nation of Israel. Yahweh will allow the enemy army to defeat the people of Israel and take them as captives. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 04 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 04 Translation Questions](#)

## **Hosea 5 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter continues using the poetic form exclusively.

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

The author uses Ephraim and Israel interchangeably. They both refer to the northern kingdom of Israel. Judah is also mentioned and refers to the southern kingdom of Judah. Benjamin is part of the southern kingdom of Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

This chapter is full of metaphors and similes. The writer uses these figures of speech to show how Yahweh will treat his people for not obeying his instructions. (See: [Metaphor](#), [Simile](#) and [people of God, my people](#))

### **Links:**

- [Hosea 05:01 Notes](#)

**Hosea 5:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> "Listen, you priests!

Pay attention, you people of Israel!

And you members of the king's family, you also need to listen!

For I will punish all of you.

The things you have done have been like a trap for the people at Mizpah.

The things you have done have become like a net spread out to catch the people who live on Mount Tabor. <sup>2</sup> Those who rebelled against me have now killed so many that they are standing deep in their blood. I tell you that I will punish them all.

**ULB:**

5 <sup>1</sup> "Hear this, priests!

Pay attention, house of Israel!

Listen, house of the king!

For judgment is coming against you all.

You have been a snare at Mizpah

and a net spread over Tabor.

<sup>2</sup> The rebels stand deep in slaughter,

but I will punish all of them. [1]Some modern versions have *The rebels have dug a deep pit* , *The rebels have dug deep at Shittim* , or, continuing on from the previous verse, *a pit dug deep at Shittim* .

**translationWords:**

- priest, priesthood
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- king
- judge, judgment
- Mizpah
- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- slaughter
- punish, punishment

**translationNotes:**

- **Connecting Statement:** - Yahweh is talking about Israel.
- **You have been a snare at Mizpah and a net spread over Tabor** - A snare and a net are both objects used to catch prey. In this case, the priests and the royal household had devised ways to keep the people away from Yahweh, while enticing them into idolatry. Mizpah and Tabor were places for idol worship in the land of Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **The rebels stand deep in slaughter** - Here “rebels” refers to all of those people who had turned away from Yahweh, and “deep in slaughter” could refer to the murder of innocent people, or to the slaughter of animals offered to pagan idols. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **The rebels** - The translator can represent this as “You rebels,” because God is really talking to the rebellious people of Israel.
- **in slaughter** - Some modern versions interpret the Hebrew expression as standing for wickedness.
- **I will punish all of them** - The translator can represent this as “I will punish all of you.”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 05 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 05 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 5:3-4****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> You, the people in Ephraim, the center of Israel—I know you.

I know very well what you are like, you people of Israel.

You people in Ephraim, you have acted like prostitutes.

Yes, you people in Israel are polluted.

<sup>4</sup> Ephraim and Israel are not able to ask me to forgive them, because of what they have done.

They have chosen to be unfaithful and immoral,

and they do not know me, Yahweh.”

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> I know Ephraim,

and Israel is not hidden from me.

Ephraim, now you have become like a prostitute;

Israel is defiled.

<sup>4</sup> Their deeds will not allow them to turn to God,

for the mind of adultery is in them,

and they do not know Yahweh.

**translationWords:**

- know, knowledge, make known
- Ephraim
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- prostitute, harlot, whore
- defile, be defiled
- works, deeds, work, acts
- turn, turn away, turn back
- God
- adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress
- Yahweh



**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is talking about Israel.
- **I know Ephraim, and Israel is not hidden from me** - Here, “Ephraim” and “Israel” both refer to the people who live in the northern kingdom of Israel. Here God says that he knows what they are like and what they are doing. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **Ephraim, now you have become like a prostitute** - Ephraim is presented in terms of a prostitute because the people have become unfaithful to God, as a prostitute is faithful to no man. (See: [Simile](#))
- **for the mind of adultery is in them** - This means they have the desire to be unfaithful to God. They want to worship idols.
- **to turn to God ... they do not know Yahweh** - The translator can represent this as “to turn to me ... they do not know me,” or “to turn to me ... they do not know me, Yahweh.”
- **and they do not know Yahweh** - Israel no longer obeys Yahweh in any way. They do not acknowledge Yahweh as their God.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 05 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 05 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 5:5-7****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> Israel is proud; because of this others know how guilty she is.

The sins that the people of Israel have committed are making them faithless to Yahweh.

Judah is becoming faithless, too.

<sup>6</sup> They are hoping to persuade Yahweh to have mercy on them.

They are coming to sacrifice sheep and cattle to him from their flocks and herds.

But they will find that Yahweh will have no mercy on them

because he has stopped helping them; he is leaving them alone.

<sup>7</sup> They did not keep their promises to Yahweh.

and they have had children by foreign women.

So at the time of the new moon festivals,

they will perish, together with their cultivated fields.”

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> The pride of Israel testifies against him;  
so Israel and Ephraim will stumble in their guilt;  
and Judah also will stumble with them.

<sup>6</sup> They will go with their flocks and herds to seek Yahweh,  
but they will not find him,  
for he has withdrawn himself from them.

<sup>7</sup> They were unfaithful to Yahweh,  
for they have borne illegitimate children.

Now the new moon festivals will devour them with their fields.

**translationWords:**

- proud, pride, prideful
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- testimony, testify
- Ephraim
- stumble
- guilt, guilty
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- flock, herd
- Yahweh
- unfaithful, unfaithfulness
- new moon
- festival
- devour

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is talking about Israel.
- **The pride of Israel testifies against him** - This describes “pride” as a person who testifies against the people of Israel in court. Their prideful attitude and behavior show that they are guilty of no longer obeying Yahweh. (See: [Personification](#))
- **so Israel and Ephraim will stumble in their guilt; and Judah also will stumble with them** - The two kingdoms will become completely disobedient to God because of their pride and sin. (See: [Idiom](#))
- **They were unfaithful to Yahweh, for they have borne illegitimate children** - Possible meanings are 1) this means the Israelites were marrying people from other nations and having children with them or 2) this means the Israelite parents were unfaithful to Yahweh and they were teaching their children to worship idols.
- **Now the new moon festivals will devour them with their fields** - The people of Israel were supposed to celebrate during the new moon. Here this expression seems to describe the new moon festival as a beast that will eat the people and their fields. However, it is hard to interpret this expression; many versions translate it without making much sense of it. However, the overall meaning is certainly that God will punish the people for their unfaithfulness to him. (See: [Personification](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 05 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 05 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 5:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> Yahweh says, "Blow the ram horns at the city of Gibeah!

Blow the trumpets at the city of Ramah!

Shout a battle cry at the city of Beth Aven!

Lead us into battle, you people of the tribe of Benjamin!

<sup>9</sup> I will punish the people of Ephraim and turn their city into a pile of rubble.

This is my promise to the tribes of Israel—I pledge to you all that I will do this.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> Blow the horn in Gibeah,  
and the trumpet in Ramah.

Sound a battle cry at Beth Aven:

'We will follow you, Benjamin!'

<sup>9</sup> Ephraim will become a desolation on the day of punishment.

Among the tribes of Israel I have declared what is certain to happen.

**translationWords:**

- Gibeah
- trumpet
- Ramah
- Benjamin
- Ephraim
- desolate, desolation
- punish, punishment
- twelve tribes of Israel
- declare, declaration

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is talking about Israel.
- **Blow the horn in Gibeah, and the trumpet in Ramah** - Here "horn" and "trumpet" mean the same thing. This command is given to the people of Gibeah and Ramah to emphasize that the enemy is coming. (See: [Doublet](#))

- **Sound a battle cry at Beth Aven: ‘We will follow you, Benjamin!’** - This may be a request that the soldiers in the tribe of Benjamin would lead the people into battle. But modern versions make various attempts to interpret this expression. (See: [Metonymy](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Beth Aven** - This was a city on the border between the northern kingdom of Israel and the tribe of Benjamin in the southern kingdom. See how you translated this in [4:15](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Among the tribes of Israel I have declared what is certain to happen** - “I will do to the tribes of Israel what I have declared”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 05 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 05 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 5:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> The leaders of Judah are as bad as people who steal farmland by moving boundary markers;  
they steal land that does not belong to them.

I will punish them in a way that will make them perish.

<sup>11</sup> Ephraim will suffer greatly; the people will perish when I punish them,  
because they were determined to worship idols.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> The leaders of Judah are like those who move a boundary stone.

I will pour my wrath on them like water.

<sup>11</sup> Ephraim is crushed;  
he is crushed in judgment,  
because he has willingly walked after idols.

**translationWords:**

- Judah
- wrath, fury
- water, waters
- Ephraim
- judge, judgment
- bow, bow down
- idol, idolatrous

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is talking about Judah and Israel.
- **The leaders of Judah are like those who move a boundary stone** - To “move a boundary stone” refers to moving the landmark that marked the border of some property, which was a crime under Israelite law. (See: **Simile**)
- **I will pour my wrath on them like water** - Yahweh’s wrath against Judah will be like a large stream of water that destroys them. In the scriptures, emotions and moral qualities are often spoken of as if they were liquids. (See: **Metaphor**)

- **Ephraim is crushed; he is crushed in judgment** - This can be stated in active form. This statement is made twice for emphasis. Here “Ephraim” refers to the people of the northern kingdom of Israel. AT: “I will punish the people of Israel severely” (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **walked after idols** - Here “walked” represents the idea of worshiping. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **idols** - The Hebrew word translated here as “idols” is uncertain in its meaning, and is translated by modern versions in many different ways.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 05 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 05 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 5:12-13****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> I will destroy Ephraim as a moth destroys wool;

I will destroy Judah as rot destroys wood.

<sup>13</sup> When the people of Ephraim realized how weak they were,  
then they asked the people of Assyria for help.

When the people of Judah realized how weak they were,  
they sent messengers to the great king of Assyria.

But he could not help you people;  
he could not make you people strong again.

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> So I will be like a moth to Ephraim,  
and like rot to the house of Judah.

<sup>13</sup> When Ephraim saw his sickness,  
and Judah saw his wound,  
then Ephraim went to Assyria,  
and Judah sent messengers to the great king.  
But he was not able to cure you people  
or heal your wound.

**translationWords:**

- Ephraim
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- messenger
- king
- heal, cure



**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is talking about Judah and Israel.
- **I will be like a moth to Ephraim, and like rot to the house of Judah** - A moth on a piece of wool and rot in a piece of wood are both destructive. Yahweh will destroy both nations. (See: [Simile](#))
- **moth ... rot** - These two terms are translated in various ways because the meaning of the Hebrew word is either very broad or it is uncertain.
- **When Ephraim saw his sickness, and Judah saw his wound** - Both Ephraim (the northern kingdom of Israel) and Judah (the southern kingdom of Israel) realized that they were in danger. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **then Ephraim went to Assyria, and Judah sent messengers to the great king** - Ephraim and Judah asked Assyria for help instead of asking Yahweh for help. "Great king" was a title for the king of Assyria.
- **But he was not able** - Here "he" refers to the king of Assyria.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 05 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 05 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 5:14-15****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> I will become like a lion to the people of Ephraim in Israel;

I will become like a young lion to the people of Judah.

I will destroy them and leave them;

I will carry them far away,

and no one will be able to rescue them.

<sup>15</sup> Then I will go back to where I came from;

from there I will wait for them to admit that they have sinned;

I will wait for them to come and ask me to help them.”

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> So I will be like a lion to Ephraim,

and like a young lion to the house of Judah.

I, even I, will tear and go away;

I will carry them off,

and there will be no one to rescue them.

<sup>15</sup> I will go and return to my place,

until they acknowledge their guilt and seek my face,

until they earnestly seek me in their distress.”

**translationWords:**

- lion
- Ephraim
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- acknowledge
- guilt, guilty
- seek, sought
- face

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is talking about Judah and Israel.
- **So I will be like a lion to Ephraim** - Yahweh is going to pursue and attack Ephraim like a lion. (See: [Simile](#))
- **and like a young lion to the house of Judah** - Yahweh is going to treat Judah in a similar way. Yahweh is showing his displeasure with both the northern and the southern kingdoms. (See: [Simile](#))
- **I, even I** - Yahweh is emphasizing that he is the one that is bringing judgment on all of his people.
- **will tear** - As a lion tears apart the animal it is eating, so Yahweh will tear his people away from their homes and country. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I will go and return to my place** - Yahweh will leave his rebellious people.
- **and seek my face** - Try to come into God's presence by means of worship and sacrifice. AT: "and ask me to pay attention to them" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 05 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 05 Translation Questions](#)

## Hosea 6 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter continues using the poetic form to show how Yahweh will still show mercy to his wayward people, the northern kingdom of Israel and the southern kingdom of Judah. Gilead is a area in the northern kingdom of Israel where several of the tribes lived. (See: [mercy, merciful](#))

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Change in Speaker

There a change in person from 1:1-3 to 1:4-6. In the first passage, the speaker is an anonymous Israelite, but in the rest of the chapter, the speaker is Yahweh.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphor

Through out the chapter, the author uses the metaphor of prostitution to say that his people have abandoned him. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Links:

- [Hosea 06:01 Notes](#)

**Hosea 6:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> The people say, "Come, let us return to Yahweh.

He has torn our flesh to pieces as a lion tears up his victim.

He did this, but he will heal our wounds.

He has hurt us and made us fall down,

but he will treat our wounds and bind them up so they will heal.

<sup>2</sup> After the second day he will restore our strength;

and on the third day he will raise us up,

so we will live close to him.

<sup>3</sup> Try to know Yahweh;

do all you can to be faithful to him.

It is as certain as tomorrow's sunrise

that he will come to us; he will come to us like the rain,

like the rain comes in the spring on our fields."

**ULB:**

6 <sup>1</sup> "Come, let us return to Yahweh.

For he has torn us to pieces, but he will heal us;

he has injured us, but he will bandage our wounds.

<sup>2</sup> After two days he will revive us;

he will raise us up on the third day,

and we will live before him.

<sup>3</sup> Let us know Yahweh;

let us press on to know Yahweh.

His coming out is as sure as the dawn;

he will come to us like the showers,

like the spring rains that water the land."

**translationWords:**

- [Yahweh](#)
- [heal, cure](#)
- [biblical time: day](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [water, waters](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **Connecting Statement:** - The people of Israel confess their need to repent.
- **he has torn us to pieces ... he has injured us** - God has punished the people of Israel because they disobeyed him and worshiped idols. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **he will heal us ... he will bandage our wounds** - Israel believes that God will be merciful to them when they repent and he will deliver them from their troubles. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **After two days he will revive us; he will raise us up on the third day** - This represents a short period of time. Israel believes God will quickly come to rescue them from their enemies. (See: [Idiom](#))
- **two days ... third day** - “2 days ... 3rd day” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **Let us know Yahweh** - Here “know” means not only to learn God’s character and laws, but also to become faithful to him. (See UDB)
- **His coming out is as sure as the dawn** - Yahweh will come to help his people just as surely as the sun rises each morning. (See: [Simile](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 06 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 06 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 6:4-5****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> But Yahweh says, "What can I do with you, you people of Ephraim?

What can I do with you, you people of the tribe of Judah?

You love me for just as long as the clouds come in the morning before they disappear again.

You love me for just as long as the dew stays before the warm sun shines on it.

<sup>5</sup> I sent my prophets to you,

and it was as though I had cut you into pieces when they spoke the messages I gave them.

You were devastated by what they said to you.

It was as though I had killed you with the words I spoke to you.

I spoke about how I would punish you.

I told you by the prophets that I was angry with you, and they told you this."

"Yahweh, you will punish them by commanding that it happen;

your words are like lightning bolts."

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> Ephraim, what will I do with you?

Judah, what will I do with you?

Your faithfulness is like a morning cloud,

like the dew that goes away early.

<sup>5</sup> So I have cut them to pieces by the prophets,

I have killed them with the words of my mouth.

Your decrees are like the light that shines out.

**translationWords:**

- Ephraim
- Judah
- faithful, faithfulness
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- decree

**translationNotes:**

- **Connecting Statement:** - Yahweh is speaking.
- **what will I do with you?** - God is expressing that his patience is coming to an end and what remains is judgment. AT: “it is hard to know what to do with you!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **So I have cut them to pieces by the prophets** - Through his prophets, Yahweh has pronounced destruction on the rebellious nation. The destruction, here called “cutting to pieces,” is as sure as the condemnation. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Your decrees are like the light that shines out** - Here the prophet Hosea is speaking to God. He may mean that when God gives the command for someone to die as punishment, it is like a bolt of lightning that strikes (see UDB). Or he may mean that God’s commandments allow people to know the truth, just as light makes objects visible. (See: [Simile](#))
- **Your decrees** - “Yahweh’s commands”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 06 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 06 Translation Questions](#)



**Hosea 6:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> Yahweh says, "I want you to be faithful to me forever.

I want that more than I want you to offer me sacrifices.

I want you to know me—that is much more important to me  
than when you give me offerings that the priests burn on the altar.

<sup>7</sup> But like Adam, the first man,  
the covenant that they made with me and that I, Yahweh, made  
with them—they broke it.

When they did that, they were not faithful to me.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> For I desire faithfulness and not sacrifice,  
and the knowledge of God more than burnt offerings.

<sup>7</sup> Like Adam they have broken the covenant;  
they were unfaithful to me.

**translationWords:**

- sacrifice, offering
- know, knowledge, make known
- God
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- Adam
- covenant
- unfaithful, unfaithfulness

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking.
- **For I desire faithfulness and not sacrifice** - This grammatical construction in Hebrew signals here the idea of "more than," as the next line shows ("and the knowledge of God more than burnt offerings"). AT: "For I desire faithfulness more than sacrifice"
- **Like Adam** - Possible meanings are 1) this refers to Adam, the first man or 2) this is a metonym that represents the people who live in a city in Israel called Adam. AT: "Like the people in the city of Adam" or 3) this refers to people in general. The word "Adam" means "man" or "humankind." AT: "Like all of humankind" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 06 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 06 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 6:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> Gilead is a city of people who do wicked things;

in the streets of that city are the footprints of murderers.

<sup>9</sup> As robbers make their plans to hide and then rob someone walking past them,

so are the priests—they band together making their plans, just like the robbers,

and they commit murder along the way to Shechem.

They commit terrible crimes.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> Gilead is a city of evildoers  
with footprints of blood.

<sup>9</sup> As gangs of robbers wait for someone,

so the priests band together to commit murder on the way to Shechem;

they have committed shameful crimes.

**translationWords:**

- Gilead
- blood
- priest, priesthood
- Shechem
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- crime, criminal

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking.
- **Gilead is a city ... with footprints of blood** - “Footprints of blood” probably represents the evildoers and their acts of murder. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the priests band together to commit murder on the way to Shechem** - We do not know what this refers to. Were priests actually guilty of attacking people on their way to Shechem, which was an important religious and political center? Or is the prophet saying that the priests have “killed” true knowledge and worship of Yahweh? It is best to translate this expression as plainly as possible.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 06 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 06 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 6:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> Among the people of Israel, I have seen a horrible thing—

the people of Ephraim worship idols everywhere.

The people of Israel have become filthy by what they have done.

<sup>11</sup> And for you also, you people of Judah,

I have set for you a time when I will separate out your good people  
from your bad people.

Just as in the harvest when you take all the crops in,

and you keep the good and throw away the bad,

that is what is coming for you, people of Judah.

That will be the day when I bring back the blessings and riches of my people  
once more.”

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> In the house of Israel I have seen a horrible thing;

Ephraim’s prostitution is there, and Israel has become unclean.

<sup>11</sup> For you also, Judah, a harvest has been appointed,

when I will restore the fortunes of my people.

**translationWords:**

- house
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Ephraim
- prostitute, harlot, whore
- unclean
- Judah
- harvest
- appoint, appointed
- restore, restoration
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking.
- **Ephraim's prostitution** - Here "prostitution" refers to Ephraim's worship of false gods. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Israel has become unclean** - Israel has become unacceptable to God because of her actions.
- **For you also, Judah, a harvest has been appointed** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "I have set a time of harvest for you also, Judah" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **harvest** - Here "harvest" represents God's final judgment on Israel and Judah. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **fortunes** - prosperity and security

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 06 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 06 Translation Questions](#)

## **Hosea 7 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter continues using poetic forms to speak of Yahweh's anger over the sin of the people. The people are not seeking Yahweh; they are seeking other gods and looking for salvation from other nations like Egypt and Assyria. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [salvation](#))

### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

#### **Baking**

Baking of bread is an extended metaphor in this chapter. Yahweh uses various aspects of this activity to show his displeasure with their sins. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

#### **Israel and Ephraim**

This chapter begins by using two different names for the same group of people: Israel and Ephraim. It also mentions Samaria, which was the capital of the northern kingdom of Israel.

#### **Links:**

- [Hosea 07:1-2](#)

**Hosea 7:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> As often as I try to heal Israel,

the people openly show that they are sinning,  
and the people in the city of Samaria show the same thing.

They lie and cheat in their buying and selling;  
they are like lawless men who attack people who are walking in the streets.

<sup>2</sup> But they do not take a moment to think that I, Yahweh, see everything they do.

Everywhere they go, they commit evil,  
and I see it all.

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> <sup>1</sup> Whenever I want to heal Israel,  
the sin of Ephraim is exposed,  
as well as the evil deeds of Samaria,  
for they practice deceit;  
a thief comes in,  
and a marauding band attacks in the street.

<sup>2</sup> They do not realize in their hearts  
that I remember all their evil deeds.  
Now their deeds surround them;  
they are before my face.

**translationWords:**

- heal, cure
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Ephraim
- evil, wicked, wickedness



- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [heart](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking.
- **I want to heal Israel** - Making Israel obedient to God again and receivers of his blessing is spoken of as if it were healing. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **for they practice deceit** - The people are selling and buying products dishonestly. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **marauding band** - This is a group of people who are attacking other people without cause.
- **their deeds surround them** - The people's evil deeds are probably spoken of here as if they were other people ready to accuse them of their crimes. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **they are before my face** - "Face" refers to God's presence, or God's awareness. The "witnesses," that is, the evil deeds, are in God's presence in order to bring their accusations. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 07 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 07 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 7:3-5****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> The wicked things they do bring delight to their king,

and the king's officials are happy when they tell lies.

<sup>4</sup> They are all sexually immoral;

they burn with lust like a baker's oven that is burning hot;

once he lights the fire, he does not need to put any more wood on it,

until he is ready to bake the bread.

<sup>5</sup> At the king's festivals, his officials do outrageous things because they are drunk with wine,

and the king joins in with them as they mock me.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> With their evil they make the king glad,

and by their lies the officials.

<sup>4</sup> They are all adulterers,

like an oven heated by the baker,

who ceases to stir the fire

from the kneading of the dough until it is leavened.

<sup>5</sup> On the day of our king the officials made themselves sick with the heat of wine.

He reached out with his hand to those who were mocking.

**translationWords:**

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- king
- adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- mock, ridicule, scoff at

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking. The Hebrew text is not clear in various places. However, many people interpret it as describing the royal officials as being unfaithful to God, and also as planning to assassinate the king, and then carrying out their plans. This seems to have happened more than once. These crimes are mentioned as illustrations of the wickedness into which the nation has sunk.
- **They are all adulterers** - The people committed spiritual adultery by worshiping idols and being unfaithful to Yahweh. They were probably also being unfaithful to their husbands or wives by sleeping with other people. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **like an oven heated by the baker** - This can be stated in active form. This means the people had strong desires to do evil. AT: “like an oven which the baker heats” (See: [Simile](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **kneading of the dough** - This is a part of the process of making bread.
- **On the day of our king** - This is perhaps a festival held by the king.
- **He reached out with his hand** - This probably means to unite or join with someone. It may mean that the king joins with his officials to mock things or people that should not be mocked, even God himself. (See: [Idiom](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 07 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 07 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 7:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> But these same officials then set about making plans to murder the king.

They are quietly angry all night,  
and they are openly angry in the morning.

<sup>7</sup> All those officials become so angry at the king,  
that they kill all their rulers.

In the end, all their kings were killed;  
not one of them called on me, Yahweh, to help.”

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> For with hearts like an oven,  
they devise their deceitful plans.  
Their anger smolders all night;  
in the morning it burns high like a flaming fire.

<sup>7</sup> They all are as hot as an oven,  
and they devour those who rule over them.  
All their kings have fallen;  
none of them calls on me.

**translationWords:**

- heart

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - The court officials’ plotting is described. Their anger is what motivates them to kill their king.
- **For with hearts like an oven** - This means like a fire burns in an oven, these people have strong evil desires within them. (See: **Simile** and **Metonymy**)
- **Their anger smolders** - The word “smolders” means something is burning slowly without a flame. AT: “Their anger grows slowly and quietly” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **it burns high like a flaming fire** - The intensity of their anger is spoken of as if it was a very hot fire. AT: “it gets very intense” (See: **Simile**)

- **They all are as hot as an oven** - This compares their anger to the heat that comes from an oven. (See: [Simile](#))
- **they devour those who rule over them** - This seems to mean that the court officials kill their kings. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 07 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 07 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 7:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> "Israel joins with other people groups,

but all the people are like a flat cake that is only cooked on one side;  
they are weak.

<sup>9</sup> People who come from far away have taken away Israel's strength.

The nation is growing very weak, like an old man whose hair is  
turning gray.

But the nation does not know it is weak.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> Ephraim mixes himself among the peoples.

Ephraim is a flat cake that has not been turned over.

<sup>9</sup> Foreigners have devoured his strength,

but he does not know it.

Gray hairs are sprinkled on him,

but he does not know it.

**translationWords:**

- Ephraim

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking.
- **Ephraim mixes himself among the peoples** - This is probably a reference to the efforts made by the northern kingdom's kings to ally themselves with other nations for protection against attack.
- **Ephraim is a flat cake that has not been turned over** - This can be stated in active form. Here "Ephraim" refers to the northern kingdom of Israel. The nation is weak, as flat bread that has not been doubled over in the oven by the baker for more strength. AT: "The people of Ephraim are like a cake that no one has turned over" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

- **Gray hairs are sprinkled on him** - Here “gray hairs” represent old age. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **but he does not know it** - However, this “old age” is clearly a way of saying that the northern kingdom is getting weaker and weaker, because the nation does not know it is “old.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 07 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 07 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 7:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> Israel is so proud that everyone else sees it.

Even so, they will not return to me—to Yahweh their God.

They will not try to persuade me to have mercy on them, no matter what happens to them.

<sup>11</sup> Israel is like a foolish bird, a dove that anyone can easily deceive.

He calls out first to Egypt, and then like a bird, he flies up to Assyria.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> The pride of Israel testifies against him;

however, they have not returned to Yahweh their God,  
nor have they sought him, in spite of all this.

<sup>11</sup> Ephraim is like a dove, gullible and without sense,  
calling out to Egypt,  
then flying to Assyria.

**translationWords:**

- proud, pride, prideful
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- testimony, testify
- turn, turn away, turn back
- Yahweh
- God
- seek, sought
- Ephraim
- dove, pigeon
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking.



- **The pride of Israel testifies against him** - This describes “pride” as a person who testifies against the people of Israel in court. This means their prideful attitude and behavior show that they are guilty of no longer obeying Yahweh. (See: [Personification](#))
- **nor have they sought him** - Israel’s lack of interest in Yahweh is spoken of as if he was lost and they were not trying to find him. AT: “nor have they tried to get him to pay attention to them” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **in spite of all this** - Here “this” refers God allowing foreigners to defeat them and make them weak.
- **Ephraim is like a dove, gullible and without sense** - Doves were thought to be foolish birds. (See: [Simile](#))
- **Egypt ... Assyria** - These were powerful nations that Israel could ask for help.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 07 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 07 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 7:12-13****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> But when they are on their way there,

I will spread my net over them,

I will bring them down as a hunter brings down birds from the air  
into a net.

I will punish them all together.

<sup>13</sup> How terrible it will be

for my people, because they have abandoned me!

They will perish

because they have rebelled against me.

I wanted to rescue them,

but they kept telling lies against me.

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> When they go, I will spread my net over them,

I will bring them down like the birds of the sky.

I will punish them

in their flocking together.

<sup>13</sup> Woe to them!

For they have strayed from me.

Devastation is coming to them!

They have rebelled against me!

I would have rescued them,

but they spoke lies against me.

**translationWords:**

- punish, punishment
- woe
- astray, go astray, led astray, stray
- devastate, devastation
- rebel, rebellious, rebellion

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking.
- **I will spread my net over them** - This is a way to catch birds. Yahweh continues to compare the people of Israel to doves. When they go to Egypt or Assyria for help, Yahweh will punish them. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I will bring them down like the birds of the sky** - Yahweh speaks of the way he will judge Israel as if they were birds that he would catch in a net. AT: “I will hunt them like birds” or “I will catch them like a hunter catches birds” (See: [Simile](#))
- **in their flocking together** - This expression extends the metaphor of the birds.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 07 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 07 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 7:14-15****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> They do not cry out to me; they do not call to me from their hearts;

they only lie on their beds and howl and cry out.

They meet together to ask their idols for their grain and new wine.

They have rebelled against me.

<sup>15</sup> Even though I trained them and helped them become strong,

even now they are planning to do evil against me.

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> They have not cried to me with all their heart,

but they wail on their beds.

They gather together for grain and new wine,

and they turn away from me. [1]Instead of *They gather together*, which the Hebrew text has, some ancient copies and many modern versions have *They cut themselves*, an allusion to the pagan custom of idol worshipers wounding themselves in the frenzy of prayer.

<sup>15</sup> Though I trained them and strengthened their arms,

they are now plotting evil against me.

**translationWords:**

- heart
- grain
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- turn, turn away, turn back
- evil, wicked, wickedness

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking.
- **they wail on their beds** - It was usual for idol worshipers to eat ceremonial meals while reclining on couches or beds.
- **and they turn away from me** - Here no longer worshiping God is spoken of as turning away from him. AT: “and they no longer worship me” (See: **Metaphor**)

- **Though I trained them and strengthened their arms** - This may be a military metaphor, in which God training the Israelites to love him and obey him is spoken of as if he had been training their men for war. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 07 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 07 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 7:16****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> They go this way and that, but never to me, God Most High.

They are like a bow that cannot shoot.

Their officers will be killed by their enemies' swords; they will die because they have insulted me.

This is why the people in Egypt will insult them.”

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> They return,

but they do not return to me, the Most High.

They are like a slack bow.

Their officials will fall by the sword

because of the insolence of their tongues.

This will become their mockery in the land of Egypt.

**translationWords:**

- Most High
- bow and arrow
- sword
- mock, ridicule, scoff at
- Egypt, Egyptian

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking.
- **They are like a slack bow** - That is, a bow that has no bowstring, or that has no tension. (See: [Simile](#))
- **because of the insolence of their tongues** - Here “tongue” refers to what the officials say. AT: “because they insult me” or “because they curse me” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **This will become their mockery in the land of Egypt** - “This is why Egypt will mock and laugh at Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 07 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 07 Translation Questions](#)

## Hosea 8 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter continues to use the poetic form to communicate several other ways the people of Israel have sinned against God. First, Yahweh notes that they have set up a king without consulting him. Next, they set up or reinstalled the golden calves of Samaria. They also decided to install a new king without consulting God. Last, they were seeking help from other nations like Egypt and Assyria. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

### Special concepts in this chapter

This chapter contains some references to the “calf of Samaria.” This most likely refers to an image that was set up by an earlier king of Israel. He did this in order to discourage his people from going to Jerusalem, which was part of the southern kingdom of Judah.

### Links:

- [Hosea 08:01 Notes](#)



**Hosea 8:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh says, "Get a trumpet and blow it.

There are enemies swooping down over my people,  
as an eagle swoops down over a victim.

This is because my people have left my covenant with them  
and have violated the law I gave them.

<sup>2</sup> My people Israel cry out to me and say,

'Our God, we are loyal to you!'

<sup>3</sup> But the people of Israel have thrown away what is good,  
so their enemies will chase after them.

**ULB:**

8 <sup>1</sup> "Place a trumpet at your lips!

An eagle is coming over the house of Yahweh  
because the people have broken my covenant  
and rebelled against my law.

<sup>2</sup> They cry out to me,

'My God, we in Israel know you.'

<sup>3</sup> But Israel has rejected what is good,  
and the enemy will pursue him.

**translationWords:**

- trumpet
- eagle
- Yahweh
- covenant
- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- adversary, enemy

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking about the coming of the Assyrian army to attack the northern kingdom.
- **An eagle is coming over the house of Yahweh** - The eagle, a bird of prey, is sometimes used to represent the enemies of Israel. AT: “As an eagle hunts another animal, the enemies of Israel are coming to capture my people” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **broken my covenant** - Here “broken” represents “disobeyed,” “violated.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **know you** - “are faithful to you”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 08 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 08 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 8:4-5****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> Israel has appointed kings for themselves,

but they did not consult with me about it.

They chose their own kings

without asking me to approve them.

They took their silver and gold and formed them into the idols they worshiped,

but the people will perish as a result.” <sup>5</sup> The prophet says, “Yes, Yahweh has rejected your idol, you people of Samaria—an idol made in the form of a calf!”

Yahweh says, “Perhaps these people will never again be innocent of evildoing. I am very angry with them!

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> They have set up kings,

but not by me.

They have made princes,

but without my knowledge.

With their silver and gold

they have made idols for themselves,

but it was only so they might be cut off.”

<sup>5</sup> “Your calf has been rejected, Samaria.

My anger is burning against these people.

For how long will they stay guilty?

**translationWords:**

- king
- prince, princess
- know, knowledge, make known
- idol, idolatrous
- cut off
- Samaria, Samaritan

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking.
- **but it was only so they might be cut off** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “but the result will be that I will destroy the people” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Your calf has been rejected, Samaria** - Possible meanings are 1) this is the prophet speaking (see UDB) or 2) Yahweh is speaking. AT: “I myself have rejected your calf, Samaria” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))
- **Your calf** - King Jeroboam the Second of Israel (See Metonymy)
- **My anger is burning against these people** - Anger is often spoken of as if it were a fire. AT: “I am very angry with these people” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **For how long will they stay guilty?** - Yahweh asks this question to express his anger about his people being impure. “I am angry with these people because they have no desire to be innocent.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 08 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 08 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 8:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> The shame of it is that this idol came from Israel! A craftsman made it.

It is only an idol; it cannot be the true and living God!

I will ensure that someone will smash it to bits.

<sup>7</sup> This is because these people do useless things, so something terrible will destroy them.

Their grain standing in the fields will give no harvest.

And even if it does, foreign soldiers will eat everything it produces.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> For this idol came from Israel;

a workman made it;

it is not God!

The calf of Samaria will be broken to pieces.

<sup>7</sup> For the people sow the wind

and reap the whirlwind.

The standing grain has no heads;

it yields no flour.

If it does come to maturity,

foreigners will devour it.

**translationWords:**

- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- God
- cow, calf, bull, cattle
- Samaria, Samaritan
- grain
- foreigner, foreign, alien
- devour

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking.
- **For the people sow the wind and reap the whirlwind** - To sow or plant the wind is to act in useless or destructive ways. To reap the whirlwind is to suffer disaster from one's own actions. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **The standing grain has no heads** - Here "head" refers to the part of the plant where the grain is. A stalk with no head has nothing to give to the farmer. In the same way, Israel's actions will result in nothing good. (See: [Idiom](#))
- **If it does come to maturity, foreigners will devour it** - If any of Israel's actions do happen to result in something good, Israel's enemies will come and take it from them. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 08 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 08 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 8:8-10****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> Other nations have destroyed Israel's power.

Now Israel is like an old, broken pot that no one wants.

<sup>9</sup> They asked the king of Assyria for help;

they were like a wild donkey wandering off by itself.

The people of Israel have tried to pay other nations to protect them.

<sup>10</sup> Although they do this,

I will soon gather them up to destroy them.

They will begin to become poor because they will have to pay money to Assyria's king.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> Israel is swallowed up;

now they lie among the nations like something useless.

<sup>9</sup> For they went up to Assyria

like a wild donkey all alone.

Ephraim has hired lovers for herself.

<sup>10</sup> Even though they have hired lovers among the nations,

I will now gather them together.

They will begin to waste away

because of the oppression of the king of princes.

**translationWords:**

- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- nation
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- donkey, mule
- Ephraim
- lover
- waste, wasteland
- oppress, oppression, oppressor
- king
- prince, princess

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking.
- **Israel is swallowed up** - “swallowed” means to be defeated and taken into exile. This can be stated in active form. AT: “The enemies of Israel have taken the Israelites away to other lands” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **like a wild donkey all alone** - People often think of donkeys as being stubborn. This means the people of Israel refused to listen to Yahweh but instead went to the people of Assyria for help. (See: [Simile](#))
- **Ephraim has hired lovers for herself** - Ephraim’s alliances with other nations are spoken of as if they had paid them to become prostitutes for Ephraim. AT: “The people of Israel have tried to pay other nations to protect them” (UDB) (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **because of the oppression of the king of princes** - That is, because the Assyrian king, also called “the Great King,” will make the people suffer.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 08 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 08 Translation Questions](#)



**Hosea 8:11-12****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> The people of Ephraim have built many altars on which to offer sacrifices for their sins;

however, these altars have become places where the people commit terrible sins against me.

<sup>12</sup> Even if I wrote out for the people of Israel my laws ten thousand times,

they would refuse to obey them.

They would say they had never heard of them.

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> For Ephraim has multiplied altars for sin offerings,

but they have become altars for committing sins instead.

<sup>12</sup> I could write down my law for them ten thousand times,

but they would view it as something strange to them.

**translationWords:**

- Ephraim
- altar
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- law, principle

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking.
- **I could write down my law for them ten thousand times** - This means that Yahweh has already given Israel his law through the prophets and told them what he expects from them many times. (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **ten thousand** - "10,000" (See: [Numbers](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 08 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 08 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 8:13-14****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> Let us think about the sacrifices that they give to me.

They sacrifice the meat and then they eat it;  
but I, Yahweh, am not pleased with those sacrifices.

I will think about their sins and will punish the people for them.  
I will make them go back to Egypt.

<sup>14</sup> And why has this happened?

The people of Israel have forgotten me, the God who made them a nation. Instead of honoring me, they have built huge homes to live in.

And instead of worshiping Yahweh, the people of Judah have built walls around their cities for protection.

So this is what I, Yahweh, will do:

I will send a fire that will destroy all their palaces and all their fortified cities.”

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> As for the sacrifices of my offerings,  
they sacrifice meat and eat it,  
but I, Yahweh, do not accept them.  
Now I will think about their iniquity  
and punish their sins.  
They will return to Egypt.

<sup>14</sup> Israel has forgotten me, his Maker,  
and has built palaces.  
Judah has fortified many cities,  
but I will send fire on his cities;  
it will destroy his fortresses.

**translationWords:**

- sacrifice, offering
- Yahweh
- iniquity
- punish, punishment
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Maker
- palace
- Judah
- fire
- stronghold, fortress, fortified

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking.
- **They will return to Egypt** - Because of their sin, God will send his people away as slaves to the Egyptians.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 08 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 08 Translation Questions](#)

## Hosea 9 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The chapter is written in poetic form to speak of Yahweh's displeasure with Israel's sins. He is showing the many ways in which they do not honor him. The priests and kings do not understand how they have totally broken their covenant with Yahweh. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#) and [covenant](#))

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Exile

Because the covenant has been broken, the people will be exiled into another land. This actually shows the mercy of God toward his people. He did not destroy them; he simply moved them to another place. However, this chapter goes into detail about many parts of their society to show how far they have moved away from truly worshipping Yahweh. (See: [mercy](#), [merciful](#) and [people of God, my people](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Change in Speaker

In verse 16, Yahweh is speaking, but in verse 17 Hosea starts speaking. There is a change in pronouns; the use of "my God" must imply that someone other than Yahweh is speaking.

#### Links:

- [Hosea 09:01 Notes](#)

**Hosea 9:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Hosea says this: Do not be happy, O Israel; do not celebrate like other people groups!

You have been unfaithful to your God. You have refused to do what he told you.

At every place where people thresh their grain,  
you give your offerings and sacrifices to idols.

You are just like men who pay money to sleep with women.

<sup>2</sup> Now you will not have enough grain or wine to feed your people.

You will have no hope for any new wine, for the vines will fail you.

**ULB:**

9 <sup>1</sup> Do not rejoice, Israel,  
with joy like the other peoples.

For you have been unfaithful,  
forsaking your God.

You love to pay the wages a prostitute requires  
on all the threshing floors.

<sup>2</sup> But the threshing floor and the winepress will not feed them;  
the new wine will fail them.

**translationWords:**

- rejoice
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- joy, joyful
- unfaithful, unfaithfulness
- forsake, forsaken, forsook
- God
- prostitute, harlot, whore
- thresh, threshing
- winepress
- wine, wineskin, new wine

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Hosea the prophet is speaking.
- **But the threshing floor and the winepress will not feed them** - This describes the threshing floor and the winepress as if they were humans that can feed someone. This means that the harvest will not provide enough grain for threshing to meet the needs of the people, and that it will not provide the grapes for pressing to make enough wine. (See: [Personification](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **the threshing floor** - These were wide areas used not only for the threshing of grain, but also for community and religious ceremonies. Temple prostitutes came in order to help the men celebrate the harvest festival to idols.
- **the new wine will fail them** - There will not be enough grape juice to make wine with.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 09 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 09 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 9:3-4****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> The people of Israel will not continue to live in the land that Yahweh has chosen as his own.

Instead, they will go back to Egypt one day.

And in Assyria they will have to eat the kind of food that God had forbidden them to eat.

<sup>4</sup> No longer will they pour out wine to offer it to Yahweh;

their sacrifices will not please him at all.

Their sacrifices will be as unacceptable to God as the food that people eat at funerals;

and everyone who eats that food becomes unacceptable to God.

That food will be all they eat;

they will not be able to bring it into Yahweh's house to offer it to him.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> They will not continue to live in Yahweh's land;

instead, Ephraim will return to Egypt,

and one day they will eat unclean food in Assyria.

<sup>4</sup> They will pour out no wine offerings to Yahweh,

neither will they be pleasing to him.

Their sacrifices will be to them like mourners' food:

all who eat it will be defiled.

For their food will be for themselves only;

it will not come into the house of Yahweh.

**translationWords:**

- Yahweh
- Ephraim
- Egypt, Egyptian
- unclean
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

- wine, wineskin, new wine
- sacrifice, offering
- mourn, mourning
- defile, be defiled
- house of God, Yahweh's house

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Hosea the prophet is speaking.
- **Yahweh's land** - This expression signals that Yahweh continues to view the land of Israel as his property, not the property of the Israelites.
- **unclean food** - This is food that the Israelites would normally refuse to eat because it would make them unacceptable to Yahweh. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Their sacrifices will be to them like mourners' food** - Here "mourners' food" refers to what people would eat while they mourning because they were defiled and not acceptable to God. This means Yahweh will consider the people's sacrifices to be defiled and he will not accept them. (See: [Simile](#))
- **For their food will be for themselves only; it will not come into the house of Yahweh** - The people of Israel will have food to eat, but Yahweh will not accept it as a sacrifice.
- **it will not come into the house of Yahweh** - The unclean food is spoken of as if it were able to go places by itself. Of course, people actually had to take it with them. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 09 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 09 Translation Questions](#)



**Hosea 9:5-6****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> There, in a country far from your home, you will not be able to celebrate the festivals that Yahweh commanded you to celebrate.

<sup>6</sup> Look! If you escape and the Assyrians do not kill you,  
the army of Egypt will capture you.

You will die there, and the people in the city of Memphis will bury you.

All your wealth in silver will be covered up  
and lost when the desert plants grow into your homes and take them over.

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> What will you do on the day of an appointed festival,  
on the day of a festival for Yahweh?

<sup>6</sup> For, look, if they escape from destruction,  
Egypt will gather them,  
and Memphis will bury them.

As for their treasures of silver—  
sharp briars will possess them,  
and thorns will fill their tents.

**translationWords:**

- appoint, appointed
- festival
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Memphis
- bury, buried, burial
- silver
- tent

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Hosea the prophet is speaking.
- **What will you do on the day of an appointed festival, on the day of a festival for Yahweh?** - Hosea uses this question to emphasize that the people will no longer be able to observe their festivals when their enemies defeat them and take them captive. AT: “You will not be able to celebrate the festivals that Yahweh appointed for you.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **the day of an appointed festival ... the day of a festival for Yahweh** - Both of these mean the same thing. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **if they escape** - Here “they” still refers to the people of Israel. You can continue stating this in second person. AT: “if you escape” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))
- **Egypt will gather them, and Memphis will bury them** - Egypt and Memphis refer to the people who live there. AT: “the army of Egypt will capture you. You will die there, and the people in the city of Memphis will bury you” (UDB) (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **As for their treasures of silver—sharp briers will possess them** - Briers growing in the places where Israelites stored their silver is spoken of as if the briers were human enemies that would take the Israelite’s precious possessions for themselves. AT: “Sharp briers will grow where they store their treasures of silver” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **sharp briers will possess them, and thorns will fill their tents** - Here “sharp briers” and “thorns” mean the same thing. To have briers and thorns growing represents a land that has become desolate and like a wilderness. (See: [Doublet](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **their tents** - Here “tents” represents the Israelites’ homes. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 09 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 09 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 9:7****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> It is now the time for God to punish you;

the time has come in which God will pay you back for every sin you have committed.

And all you people of Israel must realize that these things will happen.

So your false prophets are fools,

and those who you thought were inspired by God are actually insane.

This is because you have sinned so much

and because you have become Yahweh's enemies.

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> The days for punishment are coming;

the days for retribution are coming.

Let all Israel know these things.

The prophet is a fool,

and the inspired man is insane,

because of your great iniquity

and great hostility.

**translationWords:**

- punish, punishment
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- know, knowledge, make known
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- fool, foolish, folly
- iniquity

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Hosea the prophet is speaking.

- **The days for punishment are coming; the days for retribution are coming** - Hosea says these two similar phrases to emphasize that Yahweh will soon judge the people of Israel for their evil deeds. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **The prophet is a fool, and the inspired man is insane** - These phrases mean basically the same thing. Possible meanings are 1) that the people regarded the prophets as madmen or 2) that the prophets had become crazy because of the sins that the people had committed. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **The prophet is a fool, and the inspired man is insane** - Here “prophet” and “inspired man” both mean a person who claims to receive messages from God. It is implied that these people are false prophets and only thought they received messages from God. (See: [Doublet](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **because of your great iniquity and great hostility** - The phrases “great iniquity” and “great hostility” share similar meanings. The iniquity of the people manifested itself in hostility towards Yahweh and his prophets. (See: [Doublet](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 09 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 09 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 9:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> True prophets are people whom God has assigned to guard the people of Israel.

But everywhere they go, others set traps for them;  
even in the temple of their God, others hate them.

<sup>9</sup> The people have polluted themselves by sinning  
as the Israelites did at Gibeah long ago.  
God will not forget the wicked things they did;  
he will certainly punish them.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> The prophet is the watchman for my God over Ephraim.

But a bird snare is on all of his paths,  
and hostility toward him is in the house of his God.

<sup>9</sup> They have deeply corrupted themselves  
as in the days of Gibeah.  
God will call to mind their iniquity,  
and he will punish their sins.

**translationWords:**

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- God
- watch, watchman
- Ephraim
- snare, trap
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- corrupt, corruption
- Gibeah
- iniquity
- punish, punishment
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Hosea the prophet is speaking.
- **The prophet is the watchman for my God over Ephraim** - A “watchman” watches outside his city to see if danger is coming. The prophet warning the people when they are sinning and are in danger of having his God punish them is spoken of as if he were a watchman for the city. AT: “The prophet is like a watchman for God over Ephraim” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **The prophet is the watchman for my God over Ephraim** - Some versions translate this passage as “The prophet with my God is the watchman over Ephraim.”
- **The prophet is** - This refers to prophets in general that God has appointed. AT: “Prophets are” or “True prophets are” (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))
- **Ephraim** - Here “Ephraim” represents all the people of Israel. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **a bird snare is on all of his paths** - A “bird snare” is a trap used to catch a bird. This means the people of Israel do whatever they can to stop God’s prophet. AT: “the people set a trap for him wherever he goes” or “the people do all they can to harm him” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **They have deeply corrupted themselves as in the days of Gibeah** - “The people of Israel have sinned and become very corrupt as they did at Gibeah long ago.” This is probably a reference to the shocking actions of the tribe of Benjamin recounted in Judges 19-21.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 09 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 09 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 9:10****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> Yahweh says, "When I found Israel, it was like someone finding grapes growing in the wilderness.

When I saw your ancestors, they were like the very first figs that appear in the year, figs growing on a young fig tree.

But when they came to Mount Peor,

they gave themselves completely to that disgusting idol Baal,  
and they became as detestable as the idol they loved.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> Yahweh says, "When I found Israel, it was like finding grapes in the wilderness.

Like the firstfruit of the season on the fig tree, I found your fathers.

But they went to Baal Peor,

and they devoted themselves to that shameful idol.

They became as detestable as the idol they loved.

**translationWords:**

- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- grape
- desert, wilderness
- firstfruits
- fig
- ancestor, father, forefather
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- idol, idolatrous
- detestable, detest
- love

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking.
- **When I found Israel** - This refers to when Yahweh first started his relationship with the people of Israel by claiming them as his own special people.

- **it was like finding grapes in the wilderness. Like the firstfruit of the season on the fig tree** - Both of these statements emphasize situations that are pleasing to a person. This means Yahweh was very happy when his relationship with the people of Israel started. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Simile](#))
- **Baal Peor** - This is the name of a mountain in the land of Moab where the false god Baal was worshiped. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 09 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 09 Translation Questions](#)



**Hosea 9:11-12****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> The honor of Ephraim is like a bird that is flying away.

I will make their women so they cannot give birth, no woman will be pregnant, and no one will even conceive a child in the womb.

<sup>12</sup> Even if they raise children not their own,

I will take them from their mothers.

It will be the worst that could happen to them,

when I abandon them!

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> As for Ephraim, their glory will fly away like a bird.

There will be no birth, no pregnancy, and no conception.

<sup>12</sup> Though they have brought up children,

I will take them away so that none of them is left.

Woe to them when I turn away from them!

**translationWords:**

- Ephraim
- glory, glorious
- children, child
- woe

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking.
- **their glory will fly away like a bird** - The people of Ephraim, or the northern kingdom of Israel, will lose everything that makes other nations respect them. Their glory will quickly disappear, as a bird flies away. AT: “their glory will be like a bird that flies away from them” (See: [Simile](#))
- **when I turn away from them** - When God stops helping the northern kingdom, it will be as if he physically turned away from them. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 09 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 09 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 9:13-14****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> I have seen the people of Israel;

they were like Tyre; they were like a tree planted in a beautiful meadow.

But they will have to lead their own children out to their enemies, who will slaughter them.”

<sup>14</sup> Hosea says, Yahweh, give them—

what should you give them?

Give them wombs that miscarry,

and let their mothers’ breasts have no milk for their babies.

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> I have seen Ephraim, just like Tyre, planted in a meadow,

but Ephraim will bring out his children to someone who will slaughter them.”

<sup>14</sup> Give them, Yahweh—what will you give them?

Give them a miscarrying womb and breasts that give no milk.

**translationWords:**

- Ephraim
- Tyre, Tyrians
- children, child
- slaughter
- Yahweh
- womb

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Hosea the prophet is speaking.

- **I have seen Ephraim, just like Tyre, planted in a meadow** - “planted” refers to being in a safe place. AT: “The nation of Israel was once beautiful and pleasant like the city of Tyre, like a tree that someone plants in a meadow” (See: [Simile](#) and [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **but Ephraim will bring out his children** - “children” are the people from that nation. AT: “but the people of Israel will bring out their children” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Give them, Yahweh—what will you give them? Give them** - Hosea uses a question to emphasize that he wants Yahweh to give the people of Israel what they deserve. AT: “This is what I ask you, Yahweh, to give them: give them” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **a miscarriage womb** - To “miscarry” means that a pregnancy ends too early and the baby dies. Hosea is asking that all the nation’s women be like that.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 09 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 09 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 9:15****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> Yahweh says, "Because of all the wicked things my people did at Gilgal,  
that is where I started to hate them.  
And because of all the sinful deeds they have done,  
I will drive them out of the place they live.  
I will not love them any more;  
all their officials fight against me.

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> "Because of all their wickedness in Gilgal,  
that is where I began to hate them.  
Because of their sinful deeds,  
I will drive them out of my house.  
I will love them no more;  
all their officials are rebels.

**translationWords:**

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- Gilgal
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- works, deeds, work, acts
- cast out, drive out, throw out
- house
- love
- rebel, rebellious, rebellion

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking.
- **I will drive them out of my house** - Yahweh is stating that he will force Israel out of his land, the land of Canaan. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **their officials** - the men who serve the king

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 09 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 09 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 9:16-17****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> Ephraim is like a vine that has dried up

and produces no fruit.

Even if they give birth,

I will put to death those children they love.”

<sup>17</sup> Hosea says, My God rejected the people of Israel

because they have not obeyed him,

and they will wander from one nation to another.

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> Ephraim is diseased,

and their root is dried up;

they bear no fruit.

Even if they have children,

I will put their beloved children to death.”

<sup>17</sup> My God will reject them

because they have not obeyed him.

They will become wanderers among the nations.

**translationWords:**

- Ephraim
- fruit, fruitful
- children, child
- beloved
- death, die, dead
- God
- reject
- obey, obedient, obedience
- nation

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking in verse 16. Hosea begins speaking in verse 17.
- **Ephraim is diseased, and their root is dried up; they bear no fruit** - Yahweh speaks of the people of Israel as if they were a diseased tree that does not produce fruit and is ready to be cut down. This is a statement that the people have become weak, and that soon their enemies will come and defeat them. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 09 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 09 Translation Questions](#)



## **Hosea 10 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter is written in poetic form and continues the theme of Israel's many sins against Yahweh. Even though Israel prospered for a time as they multiplied their sins, Yahweh was leading them toward destruction. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

Yahweh's relationship to his people was not based on his people's actions. Even though they rebelled, Yahweh still desired to rescue them. (See: [people of God](#), [my people](#))

### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

#### **Jacob**

The repeated use of different names for the two kingdoms can be confusing. In verse 11, "Ephraim" refers to the northern kingdom of Israel, and "Judah" refers to the southern kingdom of Judah. However, Jacob is also mentioned. This use of "Jacob" makes us think of the earlier unified nation and may also refer to a future unified nation (See: [How to Translate Names](#)).

#### **Links:**

- [Hosea 10:01 Notes](#)

**Hosea 10:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Israel is like a vine

that produces many bundles of grapes.

But the more their fruit increased, the richer they became.

With that money they made more stone columns in honor of their idols.

<sup>2</sup> They are deceitful and cannot be trusted;

but the time has come that they must pay for their sins.

Yahweh will break their altars into pieces—

the places where they gave sacrifices to their idols,

and he promises to destroy those pillars beside which they worshiped their false gods.

**ULB:**

10 <sup>1</sup> Israel is a luxuriant vine that produces his fruit.

As his fruit increased,  
the more altars he built.

As his land produced more,  
he improved his pillars.

<sup>2</sup> Their heart is deceitful;  
now they must bear their guilt.

Yahweh will demolish their altars;  
he will destroy their pillars.

**translationWords:**

- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- vine
- fruit, fruitful
- altar
- pillar, column
- heart

- [deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive](#)
- [guilt, guilty](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Hosea is speaking about Israel.
- **Israel is a luxuriant vine that produces his fruit** - Israel is spoken of as a vine that was very fruitful. For a while the people prospered and were strong. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **a luxuriant vine** - This vine produces more fruit than normal.
- **As his fruit increased ... As his land produced more** - Both of these mean as the people prospered and grew stronger and richer.
- **Their heart is deceitful** - “heart” refers to the inner person. “They are deceitful” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **now they must bear their guilt** - “now is the time that Yahweh will punish them for their sins” (See: [Idiom](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 10 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 10 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 10:3-4****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> They say, "We have no king now because we did not honor or respect Yahweh.

But even if we had a king,  
how could a king help us?"

<sup>4</sup> The people of Israel make lying promises and false covenants;  
and because their promises are not kept,  
their sort of justice kills people, as poisonous weeds in a field would do.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> For then they will say,  
"We have no king,  
for we did not fear Yahweh,  
and a king—what could he do for us?"

<sup>4</sup> They speak empty words  
and make covenants by swearing falsely.  
So justice springs up  
like poisonous weeds in the furrows of a field.

**translationWords:**

- king
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- Yahweh
- word
- covenant
- oath, swear, swear by
- just, justice, justly

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Hosea is speaking about Israel.

- **and a king—what could he do for us?** - The people will say that their kings could not have helped them. AT: “Even if we had a king now, he could not help us.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **They speak empty words** - Here “empty words” refers to lies. AT: “They speak lies” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **So justice springs up like poisonous weeds in the furrows of a field** - What they people called justice in their laws and legal decisions is spoken of as if it were a plant sprouting up. AT: “So their decisions are not just; instead, they are harmful” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **like poisonous weeds in the furrows of a field** - Their lies and injustice spread throughout their nation and harm everyone like poisonous plants. (See: [Simile](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 10 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 10 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 10:5-6****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> Those people of Samaria tremble with fear because of what happened to the calf idols at Beth Aven.

Those people mourn over what happened to those idols,  
as did the priests who served them;

they rejoiced over them and praised their splendor,  
but now those idols have been taken away from them.

<sup>6</sup> Their idols will be carried to Assyria  
to be a gift for the great king.

The people of Israel will be disgraced;  
they will be ashamed

for having trusted in the advice they received by consulting idols.

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> The inhabitants of Samaria will be afraid  
because of the calves of Beth Aven.

Its people mourned over them,  
as did those idolatrous priests who had rejoiced over them  
and their splendor,  
but they are no longer there.

<sup>6</sup> They will be carried to Assyria  
as a present for the great king.

Ephraim will be disgraced,  
and Israel will be ashamed of its idol.

**translationWords:**

- Samaria, Samaritan
- cow, calf, bull, cattle
- mourn, mourning
- idol, idolatrous
- priest, priesthood

- rejoice
- splendor
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king
- Ephraim
- disgrace, disgraceful
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- idol, idolatrous

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Hosea is speaking about Israel.
- **Beth Aven** - This was a city on the border between the northern kingdom of Israel and the tribe of Benjamin in the southern kingdom. See how you translated this in [4:15](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **They will be carried to Assyria** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “The Assyrians will carry them away” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Ephraim will be disgraced, and Israel will be ashamed of its idol** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “And the people of Israel will be very ashamed because they had worshiped idols” (See: [Doublet](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **its idol** - Many versions interpret the Hebrew word in this passage as “advice,” “plans,” or “intentions.”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 10 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 10 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 10:7-8****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> The king of Samaria will die.

He will be like a small piece of wood that floats away down a stream.

<sup>8</sup> The hilltop places known for their wickedness—altars where the people worshiped idols—will all be destroyed.

Thorns and thistles will grow and cover all the altars that were in Samaria.

The people will beg the mountains and say,

“Cover us!”

and to the hills, “Fall on us!”

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> Samaria’s king

will be destroyed,

like a chip of wood on the surface of the water.

<sup>8</sup> The high places of wickedness will be destroyed.

This is the sin of Israel!

Thorns and thistles will grow over their altars.

The people will say to the mountains, “Cover us!”

and to the hills, “Fall on us!”

**translationWords:**

- Samaria, Samaritan
- king
- high places
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- thorn, thistle
- altar



**translationNotes:**

- **Samaria's king will be destroyed** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "The Assyrians will destroy the king of Samaria" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **like a chip of wood on the surface of the water** - This means the king of Samaria will be as helpless as a small piece of wood that waves of the water toss back and forth. (See: [Simile](#))
- **The high places of wickedness will be destroyed** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "The Assyrians will destroy Israel's high places, where the people acted very wickedly" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **The people will say to the mountains, "Cover us!" and to the hills, "Fall on us!"** - People do not normally speak to things that cannot think or hear them. Translators may choose to have a different format for this passage if their languages do not allow such speech. AT: "The people will say, 'We wish the mountains would cover us!' and 'We wish the hills would fall on us!'" (See: [Apostrophe](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 10 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 10 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 10:9****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> People of Israel, since the days of Gibeah you have been sinning;

it is as if you have been living there ever since then, because you think as they did.

Enemies will attack you evildoers at Gibeah.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> "Israel,

you have sinned since the days of Gibeah;

there you have remained.

Will not war overtake the sons of wrong in Gibeah?

**translationWords:**

- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Gibeah

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking.
- **days of Gibeah** - This is probably a reference to the shocking actions of the tribe of Benjamin recounted in Judges 19-21. See how you translated this in [9:9](#).
- **there you have remained** - This passage probably means that the people of the present time continue to act in the same ways that their ancestors did at Gibeah. AT: "and you think just as they did" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Will not war overtake the sons of wrong in Gibeah?** - Yahweh uses a question to emphasize that those in Gibeah who do wrong will certainly have to endure war. And this speaks of the people having to endure war when their enemies come as if war were a person that would catch up with them. AT: "War will certainly come on those who do wrong in Gibeah." or "Enemies will certainly attack those who do wrong in Gibeah." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **the sons of wrong** - Here "son of" is an idiom that means "having the characteristic of." AT: "those who do wrong" or "the evildoers" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 10 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 10 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 10:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> Yahweh says, "When I decide to act, I will punish them.

People groups will gather to fight against them;  
those people groups will capture them and put them in chains  
because of their many sins.

<sup>11</sup> Ephraim is like a trained calf  
that loves to thresh grain, separating out the grain from the chaff,  
and I did not put a heavy yoke on her tender neck.

But now I will put Ephraim under that yoke,  
and Judah must plow.  
and Jacob must break up the ground with the harrow.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> When I desire it, I will discipline them.

The nations will gather together against them  
and put them in bonds for their double iniquity.

<sup>11</sup> Ephraim is a trained heifer that loves to thresh the grain,  
so I will put a yoke on her fair neck.

I will put a yoke on Ephraim;  
Judah will plow;  
Jacob will pull the harrow by himself.

**translationWords:**

- discipline, self-discipline
- nation
- bind, bond, bound
- iniquity
- Ephraim
- heifer
- thresh, threshing
- grain

- [yoke](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking.
- **double iniquity** - This refers to the many sins of Israel.
- **Ephraim is a trained heifer that loves to thresh** - A heifer loves to thresh because they can walk around freely without a yoke. Yahweh means that he has allowed the people of Israel to be free and have a pleasant life. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I will put a yoke on her fair neck. I will put a yoke on Ephraim** - Here “yoke” refers to suffering and slavery. Yahweh has been kind to the people of Israel, but the people have been unfaithful to him. So he will punish them and send them away as slaves. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Judah will plow; Jacob will pull the harrow by himself** - Here “Judah” refers to the people of the southern kingdom and “Jacob” is the people of the southern kingdom. This means God will cause difficult times for both kingdoms. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **harrow** - a tool used to smooth the land and cover the seeds after plowing

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 10 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 10 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 10:12-13****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> Plow, now, and do what is right,

and you will reap the fruit of faithful love.

Do the hard work of breaking up the unplowed ground,

for now is the time for you to ask Yahweh to have mercy on you,  
so that he may come and rescue you because he does what is right.

<sup>13</sup> You have sinned wickedly, and now you will have to bear the consequences.

You told lies, and now you must suffer the results of the lies you told.

You have trusted in your own abilities and wisdom,

and you have relied on the soldiers in your armies.

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> Sow righteousness for yourselves,  
and reap the fruit of covenant faithfulness.

Break up your unplowed ground,  
for it is time to seek Yahweh,  
until he comes and rains righteousness on you.

<sup>13</sup> You have plowed wickedness;  
you reaped injustice.

You have eaten the fruit of deception  
because you trusted in your plans  
and in your many soldiers.

**translationWords:**

- sow, sower, plant
- righteous, righteousness
- reap, reaper
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love
- Yahweh

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- reap, reaper
- unjust, unjustly, injustice
- fruit, fruitful
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking.
- **Sow righteousness for yourselves, and reap the fruit of covenant faithfulness** - Righteousness and covenant faithfulness are spoken of as if they were crops that could be sown and harvested. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Break up your unplowed ground** - When the ground is “unplowed” it is not ready to be planted. Yahweh means he wants the people to repent so they can start doing what is right. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **You have plowed wickedness; you reaped injustice** - Wickedness and injustice are spoken of as if they were crops that could be sown and harvested. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **You have eaten the fruit of deception** - The result of deception are spoken of as if they were a food that could be eaten. AT: “You now suffer the consequences of having deceived each other” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 10 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 10 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 10:14-15****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> The sound of war will be among your people;

all your fortified cities will be destroyed.

It will be as when Shalman destroyed Beth Arbel in battle,

when mothers were killed while they were holding their children.

<sup>15</sup> That is what will be done to you, you people of the city of Bethel,

because of all the evil things you have done.

When the battle begins at dawn,

the king of Israel will be destroyed; the enemy will kill him.”

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> So a tumult of war will rise among your people,

and all your fortified cities will be destroyed.

It will be as Shalman destroyed Beth Arbel on a day of battle,

when mothers were dashed to pieces with their children.

<sup>15</sup> So it will happen to you, Bethel,

because of your great wickedness.

At daybreak the king of Israel will be completely cut off.”

**translationWords:**

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- stronghold, fortress, fortified
- children, child
- Bethel
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- king
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- cut off



**translationNotes:**

- **It will be as Shalman destroyed Beth Arbel on a day of battle** - The coming war is being compared to a battle long ago.
- **Shalman** - This is the name of a king who destroyed the city of Beth Arbel around 740 BC. His army murdered women and children in the attack. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Beth Arbel** - This is likely the name of a city of the tribe of Naphtali. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **So it will happen to you, Bethel, because of your great wickedness** - Here “Bethel” represents the people who live there. The prophet addresses the people of Bethel as if they were there listening to him. (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Apostrophe](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 10 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 10 Translation Questions](#)

## **Hosea 11 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter continues using the poetic form to communicate about Yahweh's relationship to northern kingdom of Israel.

### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

#### **Metaphor**

This chapter contains an extended metaphor of Israel as a male child in care of Yahweh, his parent. (See: [Metaphor](#)).

### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

Yahweh uses rhetorical questions to show his disappointment and anger at Israel's persistent rejection of Him. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#)).

### **Links:**

- [Hosea 11:01 Notes](#)

**Hosea 11:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh says, "When the nation of Israel was like a young man, I loved him.

He was like a son to me, whom I called out of Egypt.

<sup>2</sup> But the more I called out to them,

the more they ran away.

Day after day they offered their sacrifices to the idols named Baal,

and they burned incense to honor them.

**ULB:**

11 <sup>1</sup> "When Israel was a young man I loved him,

and I called my son out of Egypt.

<sup>2</sup> The more they were called,

the more they went away from me.

They sacrificed to the Baals

and burned incense to idols. [1]Some ancient and most modern versions have *they went away from me* . The Hebrew text has *they went away from them* .

**translationWords:**

- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- love
- call, calling, called, call out
- son, son of
- Egypt, Egyptian
- turn, turn away, turn back
- sacrifice, offering
- Baal
- incense
- idol, idolatrous

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking of caring for Israel like a parent cares for a child.

- **When Israel was a young man** - Yahweh is speaking about the people of Israel as if they were a young man. Yahweh is referring to when he first started his relationship with the nation. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I called my son out of Egypt** - “son” refers to the people of God the Father. AT: “I led my son out of Egypt” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **The more they were called, the more they went away from me** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “The more I called them to be my people, the more they refused me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 11 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 11 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 11:3-4****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> But it was I who taught them to do everything good, as a father teaches his son to walk.

I was like a father, holding them by their little arms.

But they did not understand that I was the one who was taking care of them.

<sup>4</sup> With kindness I guided them, with the tender cords of human kindness I led them.

I loved them so much that I guided them and led by my own hand.

They worked very hard, like a yoke of oxen pulling a plow, but I made their yoke light and loosened its weight on their jaws, so they did not suffer pain.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> Yet it was I who taught Ephraim to walk.

It was I who lifted them up by their arms,  
but they did not know that I cared for them.

<sup>4</sup> I led them with cords of humanity,  
with bands of love.

I was to them like someone who eased the yoke on their jaws,  
and I bent down to them and fed them.

**translationWords:**

- Ephraim
- walk
- love
- yoke

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking about how he cared for Israel.
- **it was I who taught Ephraim to walk** - Yahweh refers to Israel as a small child whom he taught to walk. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **lifted them up by their arms** - This expression continues the metaphor. AT: “took care of them”
- **I led them with cords of humanity, with bands of love** - Yahweh loved his people in ways that they as humans could understand and appreciate. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **I was to them like someone who eased the yoke on their jaws** - Yahweh is speaking of the nation of Israel as a hardworking animal whose work he made easier. (See: [Simile](#))
- **I bent down to them and fed them** - This expression continues the metaphor in which Israel is pictured as a young child. It may mean that Yahweh provided for all their physical needs.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 11 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 11 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 11:5-7****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> But Israel will certainly return to Egypt,

and Assyria will certainly rule over them,

because they refused to turn back to me and worship me as their God.

<sup>6</sup> Their enemies will attack Israel's cities with swords;

their enemies will destroy the bars that keep their gates closed and safe.

Their enemies will destroy the people of Israel and put an end to all the plans they made.

<sup>7</sup> My people are determined to turn away from me.

They pretend to call out to me, the Most High God,

but I will allow no one to help them.

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> Will they not return to the land of Egypt?

Will Assyria not rule over them

because they refuse to return to me?

<sup>6</sup> The sword will fall on their cities

and destroy the bars of their gates;

it will destroy them

because of their own plans.

<sup>7</sup> My people are determined to turn away from me.

Though they call to the Most High,

no one will help them.

**translationWords:**

- Egypt, Egyptian
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

- ruler, rulers, rule
- gate, gate bar
- people of God, my people
- turn, turn away, turn back

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking about Israel.
- **Will they not return to the land of Egypt?** - This question means that the nation of Israel will once again be slaves as they were in Egypt. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Will Assyria not rule over them because they refuse to return to me?** - The nation of Israel will be captives of Assyria as a result of their refusal to remain faithful to Yahweh. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **The sword will fall on their cities** - Here “sword” represents the enemies of Israel who will destroy Israel’s cities. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **destroy the bars of their gates** - Gates offered security to city inhabitants from their enemies, and the bars secured the closed gates. To destroy the bars meant to take away the people’s security. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Though they call to the Most High** - Here God is speaking about himself in the third person. It can be stated in first person. AT: “Though they call to me, the Most High” (see: [First, Second or Third Person](#)).
- **no one will help them** - Yahweh will not allow anyone to help Israel because they turned away from him.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 11 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 11 Translation Questions](#)



**Hosea 11:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> But you people of Israel—dear Israel—I cannot abandon you.

I cannot give you over to your enemies.

I do not want to act toward you as I acted toward Admah or make you like Zeboiim—

cities that I destroyed along with Sodom.

I have changed my mind about punishing you;

I earnestly long to have mercy on you.

<sup>9</sup> I have decided not to punish you severely.

I do not want to destroy you, the people of my Israel, whom I love.

Human beings would easily decide to do that,

but I am God, not human.

I am the Holy One who lives among you;

I will not come to you and be angry with you.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> How can I give you up, Ephraim?

How can I hand you over, Israel?

How can I make you like Admah?

How can I make you like Zeboiim?

My heart has changed within me;

all my compassions have been stirred up.

<sup>9</sup> I will not execute my fierce anger;

I will not again destroy Ephraim.

For I am God

and not a man;

I am the Holy One among you,

and I will not come in wrath.

**translationWords:**

- Ephraim
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- heart
- compassion, compassionate
- angry, anger
- God
- Holy One
- wrath, fury

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking about Israel.
- **How can I give you up, Ephraim? How can I hand you over, Israel?** - Yahweh loves his people so much that he will not totally destroy them. These questions may be translated as statements. AT: "I will not give you up, Ephraim. I will not hand you over, Israel." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **How can I make you like Admah? How can I make you like Zeboiim?** - Yahweh loves his people so much that he will not totally destroy them. These questions may be translated as statements. AT: "I do not want to act toward you as I acted toward Admah or make you like Zeboiim—cities that I destroyed along with Sodom" (UDB) (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **For I am God and not a man** - God is not like people, who often decide very quickly to take revenge.
- **My heart has changed within me** - Here "heart" represents God's will and decisions. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **I will not come in wrath** - The abstract noun "wrath" can be stated as the adjective "angry." AT: "I will not come to you and be angry with you" (UDB) (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 11 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 11 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 11:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> They will live their lives following my commands.

I will roar like a lion.

And when I roar, my people will hear and will come trembling.

They will come back to me from far away—

from the west they will come back to me.

<sup>11</sup> They will come fluttering into the land

like a flock of birds coming up from Egypt.

And some will be like pigeons that fly in from Assyria.

I will let them live in their own homes once more, in the land of Israel.

I, Yahweh, have promised this.”

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> They will walk after me, Yahweh.

I will roar like a lion.

I will indeed roar,

and the people will come trembling from the west.

<sup>11</sup> They will come trembling like a bird from Egypt,

like a dove from the land of Assyria.

I will make them live in their homes.” This is the declaration of Yahweh.

**translationWords:**

- walk
- I, Yahweh; me, Yahweh
- lion
- people of God, my people
- Egypt, Egyptian
- dove, pigeon
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- life, live, living, alive
- declare, declaration

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking about when he will restore his people.
- **They will walk after me, Yahweh** - Worshiping and honoring Yahweh is spoken of as if it were following after him (UDB) (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I will roar like a lion** - Yahweh making it possible for his people to return to his land is spoken of as if he were calling to his people. (See: [Simile](#))
- **They will come trembling like a bird ... like a dove** - They will come home quickly as a bird returns to its nest. “Trembling” may refer to the fluttering of a bird’s wings (See UDB). It may also signal the people’s feelings of humility and reverence for God (See: [Simile](#))
- **the declaration of Yahweh** - “what Yahweh has declared” or “what Yahweh has solemnly said.” See how you translated this in [2:13](#).

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 11 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 11 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 11:12****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> "The people of Israel have continually lied to me.

But the people of Judah they still obey me and are faithful to me,  
the Holy One."

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> "Ephraim surrounds me with falsehood,  
and the house of Israel with deceit.  
But Judah is still going about with me, God,  
and is faithful to me, the Holy One."

**translationWords:**

- Ephraim
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- Judah
- God
- faithful, faithfulness
- I, Yahweh; me, Yahweh
- Holy One

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is talking about Israel and Judah.
- **Ephraim surrounds me with falsehood, and the house of Israel with deceit** - Lies and deceitful acts are spoken of as if they were objects that the people of the northern kingdom surrounded Yahweh with. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **But Judah is still going about with me** - The people of the southern kingdom are still loyal to God. Here "going about with me" represents being together with God. However, many versions have different interpretations of this difficult passage. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 11 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 11 Translation Questions](#)

## **Hosea 12 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Jacob**

There is a parallel between Jacob and the northern kingdom of Israel. In the same way Jacob returned to Yahweh, the northern kingdom should repent of their idolatry and turn back to Yahweh. (See: [repent](#), [repentance](#))

#### **Links:**

- [Hosea 12:01 Notes](#)

**Hosea 12:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> The people of Israel do only what is useless;

they do only things that will destroy them.

They tell more and more lies; they do more and more acts of violence.

They make a treaty with Assyria,

and they send olive oil to Egypt,

to persuade those nations to protect them.

<sup>2</sup> Yahweh is also accusing the people of Judah of breaking his covenant.

He will punish those descendants of Jacob for what they have done.

He will pay them back; he will give them what they deserve.

**ULB:**

12 <sup>1</sup> Ephraim feeds on the wind

and follows after the east wind.

He continually multiplies lies and violence.

They make a covenant with Assyria

and carry olive oil to Egypt.

<sup>2</sup> Yahweh also has a lawsuit against Judah

and will punish Jacob for what he has done;

he will repay him for his deeds.

**translationWords:**

- Ephraim
- covenant
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- olive
- oil
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Yahweh
- Judah
- punish, punishment
- Jacob, Israel

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Hosea the prophet is speaking.
- **Ephraim feeds on the wind** - Here “Ephraim” represents all the people of Israel. Also “wind” represents something that is useless or temporary. The people of Israel doing things that will not help them is spoken of as if they eat the wind. (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **and follows after the east wind** - East winds were very hot and destructive to the land. Here it represents anything that is destructive. The people doing things that will destroy themselves is spoken of as if they are following the east wind. (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **carry olive oil to Egypt** - The people of Israel sent olive oil as a present to the king of Egypt to try and persuade him to help them.
- **Yahweh also has a lawsuit against Judah** - Yahweh stating that the people of Judah have sinned against him and broken his covenant is spoken of as if Yahweh were accusing them in court. See how you translated a similar phrase in [4:1](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **against Judah ... punish Jacob for what he has done ... repay him for his deeds** - Here “Judah” and “Jacob” both represent the people of Judah. AT: “against the people of Judah ... punish them for what they have done ... repay them for their deeds” (See: [Doublet](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **lawsuit** - This is a complaint by one person against another person in a court of law. See how you translated this in [2:2](#).

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 12 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 12 Translation Questions](#)



**Hosea 12:3-4****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> When Jacob was in his mother's womb, he grabbed his brother Esau's heel because he wanted to take his brother's place and be the firstborn.

When Jacob grew up, he wrestled with God.

<sup>4</sup> When the angel appeared to him, he struggled with him and won.

Jacob cried out to the angel and begged him to bless him.

Jacob found Yahweh at Bethel;

it was there that Yahweh spoke with him.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> In the womb Jacob grasped his brother by the heel,  
and in his manhood he struggled with God.

<sup>4</sup> He struggled with the angel and won.

He wept and begged for his favor.

He met God at Bethel;

there God spoke with him.

**translationWords:**

- womb
- Jacob, Israel
- brother
- God
- angel, archangel
- beg, beggar
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- Bethel

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Hosea the prophet is speaking about Jacob the ancestor of the Israelites.
- **In the womb Jacob grasped his brother by the heel** - Jacob wanted to take his brother's place as the firstborn, so he tried to keep his brother from being born first. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

- **He struggled with the angel and won** - Jacob fought with an angel so that the angel would bless him. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 12 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 12 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 12:5-6****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> This is Yahweh, the God of the angel armies!

“Yahweh” is the name by which we should worship him.

<sup>6</sup> Turn to your God!

Obey his covenant and do what is right.

Never stop trusting in your God for him to help you.

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> This is Yahweh, the God of hosts;

“Yahweh” is his name to be called on.

<sup>6</sup> So turn to your God.

Keep covenantal faithfulness and justice,

and wait continually for your God.

**translationWords:**

- **Yahweh**
- **Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host**
- **God**
- **covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love**
- **just, justice, justly**

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Hosea the prophet is speaking.
- **is his name to be called on** - This can be stated in active form. Here “name” represents the entire character of God. AT: “is his name to which we pray” or “is his name by which we worship him” (See: **Active or Passive** and **Metonymy**)
- **Keep covenantal faithfulness and justice** - This refers to obeying God’s law and doing what is right.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 12 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 12 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 12:7-8****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> The merchants are wicked; they use scales that give wrong weights and measures,  
so they can cheat those who buy from them.

<sup>8</sup> The people of Israel boast,  
"We are very rich,  
and we have found ways to make ourselves even more wealthy than we are  
now.

In all our buying and selling, no one can see anything wrong in  
what we do."

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> The merchants have false scales in their hands;  
they love to defraud.

<sup>8</sup> Ephraim said, "I have certainly become very rich;  
I have found wealth for myself.

In all my work they will not find any iniquity in me,  
anything that would be sin."

**translationWords:**

- Ephraim
- works, deeds, work, acts
- iniquity
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Hosea the prophet is speaking about Israel.
- **false scales** - The merchants use scales that do not accurately measure the weight of the money or products they are buying or selling.
- **they love to defraud** - The merchants cheat their customers by lying to them and taking more money than they should.

- **I have certainly become very rich; I have found wealth for myself** - These two phrases mean the same thing and mean that the people of Ephraim consider themselves to be very prosperous. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **I have found wealth** - Becoming wealthy by trading is spoken of as finding wealth. AT: “I have made much money” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **they will not find any iniquity in me, anything that would be sin** - These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize that the people of Ephraim consider themselves to be blameless. Learning that someone has sinned is spoken of as finding sin in that person. AT: “they will not discover that I have done anything sinful” (See: [Doublet](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 12 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 12 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 12:9-10****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> But Yahweh says, "I am Yahweh, whom you should worship;

I am the one who brought your ancestors out of Egypt.

I will force you away from your homes and make you live in tents again,

just as when you live in tents for a few days every year

when you celebrate the Festival of Shelters.

<sup>10</sup> Many times I spoke to the prophets and gave them messages, for them to give to you;

and I gave them many visions for you,

and I gave them parables, for them to speak to you."

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> "I am Yahweh your God from the land of Egypt.

I will again make you live in tents,

as in the days of the appointed festival.

<sup>10</sup> I spoke to the prophets,

and I gave them many visions for you.

By the hand of the prophets I gave parables."

**translationWords:**

- Yahweh
- God
- Egypt, Egyptian
- life, live, living, alive
- tent
- appoint, appointed
- festival
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- vision
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- parable

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking to the people of Israel.
- **I am Yahweh your God from the land of Egypt** - Possible meanings are 1) “I am Yahweh your God, who brought your ancestors from the land of Egypt” or 2) “I have been your God ever since you were in the land of Egypt” or 3) “I became your God when you were in the land of Egypt”
- **I will again make you live in tents** - Possible meanings are 1) Yahweh is threatening to force the people of Israel from their homes and make them live in tents. So, here to “live in tents” would represent being sent into exile, or 2) it is a promise that after their exile the people will live in tents again, and Yahweh will take care of them as he did when the Israelites left Egypt. So, here “to live in tents” would represent a return to an ideal situation when Yahweh took care of his people. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **By the hand of the prophets** - Here “hand” represents the one who carries out an action. AT: “Through the prophets” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 12 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 12 Translation Questions](#)



**Hosea 12:11-12****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> The prophet says that if it is true that the people in the region of Gilead are wicked,  
then surely they are also worthless!

In Gilgal they kill bulls and offer them to their idols;

but these altars will be pulled down and turned into piles of stones  
in their fields.

<sup>12</sup> Jacob fled to the land of Aram;

he, whose name God would later change to Israel, worked many  
years so he could marry a woman.

He took care of his uncle's sheep in order to marry her.

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> If there is wickedness in Gilead,  
surely the people are worthless.

In Gilgal they sacrifice bulls;

their altars will be like heaps of stone in the furrows of the fields.

<sup>12</sup> Jacob fled to the land of Aram;

Israel worked in order to get a wife;

and he kept flocks of sheep to get a wife.

**translationWords:**

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- Gilead
- sacrifice, offering
- altar
- Jacob, Israel
- Aram, Aramean, Aramaic
- flock, herd
- sheep, ram, ewe

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Hosea the prophet is speaking.
- **their altars will be like heaps of stone in the furrows of the fields** - The altars where the people worshiped will be thrown down and become piles of stones. (See: [Simile](#))
- **Jacob fled to the land of Aram; Israel worked in order to get a wife** - Here “Jacob” and “Israel” refer to the same person. Jacob’s name became Israel later in his life.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 12 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 12 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 12:13-14****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> Yahweh used the prophet Moses to bring Israel out of Egypt,

and he took care of them by the prophet who led them.

<sup>14</sup> The people of Israel have caused Yahweh to become very angry;

their Lord says that they are guilty of the death of many, and that their guilt remains on them.

He will pay them back because they have insulted him with their shameful deeds.

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> Yahweh brought Israel out of Egypt by a prophet,  
and by a prophet he took care of them.

<sup>14</sup> Ephraim has bitterly angered Yahweh.

So his Lord will leave his blood on him  
and will turn back on him his disgrace.

**translationWords:**

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Egypt, Egyptian
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Ephraim
- angry, anger
- Lord
- blood

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Hosea the prophet is speaking.
- **by a prophet** - That is, Moses.
- **bitterly** - The anger that the people have caused in Yahweh is extremely great.
- **So his Lord will leave his blood on him** - Here “blood” refers to the guilt incurred by people who murder others. God will not forgive their sins. (See: **Metonymy**)

- **will turn back on him his disgrace** - The idea of making someone suffer the results of his own actions is spoken of as if those actions were objects that were thrown back at him. AT: “will make him suffer from his own disgraceful actions” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 12 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 12 Translation Questions](#)

## **Hosea 13 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter uses poetry to communicate Yahweh's disgust and anger with the northern kingdom of Israel.

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

"Israel" and "Ephraim" are terms used to speak about the people of the northern kingdom. Samaria was the capital of the northern kingdom (See: [How to Translate Names](#)).

This chapter makes it clear that the northern kingdom is going to be nearly decimated as a people. They will no longer exist.

### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

Hosea uses rhetorical questions throughout this this chapter. They are not questions requesting information but rather questions indicating some emotion like anger or dissatisfaction. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#)).

### **Links:**

- [Hosea 13:01 Notes](#)

**Hosea 13:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh says, "When the leaders of Israel spoke, the people trembled;  
they were respected in Israel.

But because they all worshiped Baal, they became guilty,  
and they died.

<sup>2</sup> Now they sin more and more;  
they make cast metal figures out of silver  
to make them their idols.

Those idols are statues that are very cleverly made,  
but those statues are made only by craftsmen.

But other people see  
that the men of Israel sacrifice to these calf-idols and kiss them to  
worship them.

**ULB:**

13 <sup>1</sup> "When Ephraim spoke, there was trembling.  
He exalted himself in Israel,  
but he became guilty because of Baal worship, and he died.

<sup>2</sup> Now they sin more and more.  
They make cast metal figures from their silver,  
idols as skillfully worked as possible,  
all of them the work of the craftsmen.  
People say of them,  
'These men who sacrifice kiss calves.'

**translationWords:**

- Ephraim
- exalt, exaltation
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- guilt, guilty
- Baal

- [worship](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [kiss](#)
- [cow, calf, bull, cattle](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking.
- **When Ephraim spoke** - Hosea uses the term “Ephraim” to refer to the entire northern kingdom, although it was also the name of one of the ten tribes. Hosea seems to be speaking of a long-past time, when the northern kingdom was strong and honored, unlike at the present time. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **there was trembling** - The missing phrase “among other nations” is understood here. Other nations felt humility in front of the northern kingdom. AT: “there was trembling among other people” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **He exalted himself in Israel** - Here “exalting” means to make oneself important. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **but he became guilty because of Baal worship, and he died** - When the people of Ephraim began worshiping Baal, they grew weak, and their enemies defeated them. Here “died” refers to the nation growing weak. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Now they sin more and more** - Here “they” refers to the tribe of Ephraim and the entire nation of Israel, who followed Ephraim’s example.
- **These men who sacrifice kiss calves** - Part of idol worship was kissing idol figures that were images of calves. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 13 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 13 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 13:3****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> So the people of Israel will disappear

as quickly as the clouds that form in the morning,

as quickly as the dew, when the sun dries it up.

They will disappear as easily as the chaff that the wind blows away from the threshing place.

They will disappear as easily as the smoke that goes out of the chimney.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> So they will be like the morning clouds,

like the dew that goes away early,

like the chaff that is driven by the wind away from a threshing floor,

and like smoke out of a chimney.

**translationWords:**

- [chaff](#)
- [thresh, threshing](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **So they will be like the morning clouds ... like the dew ... like the chaff ... like smoke out of a chimney** - These expressions state that Israel is temporary and will soon disappear if they continue to worship idols instead of following Yahweh. (See: [Simile](#))
- **that is driven by the wind away** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “that the wind blows away” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 13 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 13 Translation Questions](#)



**Hosea 13:4-6****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> But I am Yahweh, whom you should worship;

I am the one who brought you out of the land of Egypt.  
You must worship no other God; you must worship only Me.  
There is no one else who can rescue you.

<sup>5</sup> I took charge of you in the wilderness,  
in a desert where there was no water to drink.

<sup>6</sup> When I provided food for you,  
you ate as much as you wanted and were satisfied.  
But when you were no longer hungry, you became proud  
and forgot about me.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> But I am Yahweh your God from the land of Egypt.  
You must acknowledge no God but me;  
you must acknowledge that besides me, there is no other savior.

<sup>5</sup> I knew you in the wilderness,  
in the land of great dryness.

<sup>6</sup> When you had pasture, then you became full;  
and when you were filled, your heart became lifted up.  
For that reason you forgot me.

**translationWords:**

- Yahweh
- God
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Savior
- know, knowledge, make known
- desert, wilderness
- heart

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking of his people as if they had been a flock of sheep that he found wandering in the wilderness. He says that he claimed them there for his own.
- **I knew you in the wilderness** - Yahweh claimed the Hebrew people as his own special people, and he took care of them there.
- **When you had pasture, then you became full** - The image of sheep is continued with this expression.
- **your heart became lifted up** - Here “heart” represents the inner person as a whole. AT: “you became proud” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Idiom](#))
- **lifted up** - Becoming arrogant is spoken of as being lifted up. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 13 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 13 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 13:7-8****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> So I will attack you like a lion;

I will attack you like a leopard that waits beside the road to suddenly jump on a traveler.

<sup>8</sup> I will come against you like a female bear when someone steals her cubs,  
and I will rip open your chests.

Like a lion that attacks—

as a wild animal would tear you apart.

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> I will become like a lion to them;

like a leopard I will watch along the path.

<sup>8</sup> I will attack them as a bear that is robbed of her cubs.

I will rip open their chests,

and there I will devour them as a lion,

as a wild beast would tear them to pieces.

**translationWords:**

- lion
- leopard
- devour
- beast

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking.
- **like a lion ... like a leopard ... as a bear ... as a lion ... as a wild beast** - These are wild animals that attack and kill other animals. Yahweh continues to say that he will destroy his people for their sins. (See: [Simile](#))

- **as a bear that is robbed of her cubs** - The words “would attack” are left out because they are understood. This can be stated in active form. AT: “like a bear would attack an animal that takes her cubs” (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **as a lion** - The words “would devour them” are left out because they are understood. AT: “as a lion would devour them” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 13 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 13 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 13:9-11****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> You people of Israel, I will destroy you.

No one will be able to help you.

<sup>10</sup> You no longer have any king

who can save you in any of your cities.

You no longer have any of the rulers whom you asked me to give you.

<sup>11</sup> When I gave you a king, I gave him to you because I was angry with you.

And because I was angry with you, I took your kings away.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> I will destroy you, Israel;

who will be able to help you?

<sup>10</sup> Where now is your king,

that he may save you in all your cities?

Where are your rulers, about whom you said to me,

‘Give me a king and princes’?

<sup>11</sup> I gave you a king in my anger,

and I took him away in my wrath.

**translationWords:**

- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- king
- save, safe
- ruler, rulers, rule
- prince, princess
- wrath, fury

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking.

- **who will be able to help you?** - Yahweh uses a question to emphasize that no one will be able to help the people of Israel. AT: “there will be no one able to help you.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Where now is your king, that he may save you in all your cities? Where are your rulers, about whom you said to me, ‘Give me a king and princes’?** - Yahweh asks these questions to tell Israel that when they rebel against him, no king or ruler can help them. Only Yahweh can save them from destruction. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 13 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 13 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 13:12-13****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> I have kept track of all the wicked deeds that you people of Israel have committed; I have recorded all your guilt.

<sup>13</sup> You are like a baby ready to be born,  
but you are foolish,  
because you are like a child who refuses to be born.

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> Ephraim's iniquity has been stored up;  
his guilt has been stored up.  
<sup>13</sup> Pains of childbirth will come on him,  
but he is an unwise son,  
for when it is time to be born, he does not come out of the womb.

**translationWords:**

- Ephraim
- iniquity
- guilt, guilty
- wise, wisdom
- son, son of
- womb

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking.
- **Ephraim's iniquity has been stored up; his guilt has been stored up** - These two phrases are similar and mean basically the same thing. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **has been stored up** - The northern kingdom's iniquity and guilt are spoken of as if they were objects that could be kept for a purpose. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Pains of childbirth will come on him** - Here Yahweh speaks of the suffering the people of Israel will suffer as if it were the pains of child birth. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **but he is an unwise son, for when it is time to be born, he does not come out of the womb** - Yahweh now describes the people of Israel as the baby to which the mother is giving birth. The baby is unwise because it does not want to be born. The people do not want to repent and obey Yahweh. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 13 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 13 Translation Questions](#)



**Hosea 13:14****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> Will I really keep you from dying?

Will I rescue you from dying?

No! I will let you die

I will let you perish.

I have no more compassion left for you.”

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> Will I rescue them from the hand of Sheol?

Will I rescue them from death?

Where, death, are your plagues?

Where, Sheol, is your destruction?

Compassion is hidden from my eyes.”

**translationWords:**

- power, powers
- hades, sheol
- death, die, dead
- plague
- compassion, compassionate

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking.
- **Will I rescue them from the hand of Sheol? Will I rescue them from death?** - Yahweh uses these questions to tell the people of Israel that he is not going to save them from dying. He will certainly punish them. AT: “I will certainly not rescue them from death and from going down to Sheol.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Parallelism](#))
- **Where, death, are your plagues? Where, Sheol, is your destruction?** - Yahweh speaks to “death” and “Sheol” as if they were people. Yahweh uses questions to say that he will destroy the people soon. AT: “Now I will cause plagues and let the people of Israel die. I will

destroy them and send them to Sheol.” (See: [Personification](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Parallelism](#))

- **Compassion is hidden** - The possibility of having compassion is spoken of as if it were an object. (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **Compassion is hidden from my eyes** - Not to think about having compassion is spoken of as if compassion were hidden so that it cannot be seen. AT: “I have no compassion for them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Links:

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 13 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 13 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 13:15****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> The prophet Hosea says: "Even though you people of Israel are wealthier than those of Judah,  
the day is coming when Yahweh will destroy you.  
You will meet disaster.  
Your enemies will take everything valuable away from you.

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> Though Ephraim is prosperous among his brothers,  
an east wind will come;  
the wind of Yahweh will blow in from the wilderness.  
Ephraim's spring will dry up,  
and his well will have no water.  
His enemy will plunder his storehouse of every precious object.

**translationWords:**

- Ephraim
- brother
- Yahweh
- desert, wilderness
- fountain, spring
- well, cistern
- water, waters
- adversary, enemy
- storehouse
- precious

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Hosea the prophet is speaking.
- **his brothers** - This expression seems to stand for the nations around the northern kingdom, especially Judah, the southern kingdom. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **an east wind will come; the wind of Yahweh** - A wind from the east was very hot and destructive. Here it refers to the armies from the east that Yahweh will send to destroy the people of Israel. (See: **Metaphor**)

- **Ephraim's spring will dry up, and his well will have no water** - Hosea continues to describe how God will punish the people of Israel. Here water represents life, vitality, and strength. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **his storehouse** - This refers to all of the peoples' possessions. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 13 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 13 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 13:16****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> The people of the city of Samaria are guilty because they have rebelled against God.

Their enemies will kill them with swords.

they will throw their children far down to the ground and kill them;

they will rip open their pregnant women.”

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> Samaria will be guilty,

for she has rebelled against her God.

They will fall by the sword;

their young children will be dashed to pieces,

and their pregnant women will be ripped open.

**translationWords:**

- Samaria, Samaritan
- guilt, guilty
- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- God
- sword

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Hosea the prophet is speaking.
- **Samaria will be guilty, for she has rebelled against her God** - Here “Samaria” refers to the people in the city of Samaria who are guilty of rebelling against God. (See: **Metonymy**)
- **They will fall** - The people will die. (See: **Metonymy**)
- **by the sword** - In warfare (See: **Metonymy**)
- **their young children will be dashed to pieces, and their pregnant women will be ripped open** - These phrases can be put into the active voice. AT: “the enemy will dash their young children to pieces, and they will rip open the pregnant women” (See: **Active or Passive**)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 13 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 13 Translation Questions](#)

## Hosea 14 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This last chapter of Hosea ends with hope. In this chapter, Hosea calls for Israel to confess and repent to Yahweh. This chapter continues to be written in poetic form using metaphors and other devices to communicate God's love for his sinful people. (See: [confess](#), [confession](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [love](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [people of God](#), [my people](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Why are confession and repentance even suggested here for a people that Yahweh has already condemned to be destroyed? It is because this is a teaching that Yahweh is a merciful God who loves his people. (See: [mercy](#), [merciful](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Speaker

The use of first and second person in this chapter often signifies a change in speaker. In this chapter, Hosea is speaking to the northern kingdom to tell them that Yahweh loves them. There are several times in this chapter where the writer switches from the third person to the second or the first person. This may cause some confusion about who is speaking.

#### Links:

- [Hosea 14:01 Notes](#)

**Hosea 14:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Israel, return to Yahweh your God!

You have sinned because you have done wicked things.

<sup>2</sup> So now, return to Yahweh, and think about how you will confess your sins to him.

Say this to him:

”Take away all our sins,

and accept us; please be kind to us.

Please accept us back, so that we may praise you in our words and song.

**ULB:**

14 <sup>1</sup> Israel, return to Yahweh your God,

for you have fallen because of your iniquity.

<sup>2</sup> Take with you words and return to Yahweh.

Say to him, ”Take away all our iniquity

and accept what is good,

so that we may offer to you the fruit of our lips. [1]The phrase *so that we may offer to you the fruit of our lips* represents the interpretation of some ancient versions. The Hebrew text has *so that we may offer bulls, our lips* . Some modern versions interpret this to mean, *so that we may offer to you bulls, which we have promised to do* .

**translationWords:**

- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Yahweh
- God
- iniquity
- word

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Hosea the prophet is speaking.



- **for you have fallen because of your iniquity** - Sinning is spoken of here as if it were falling. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Take with you words** - This probably means words of confession and praise. “Confess your sins” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the fruit of our lips** - What a person says is called the fruit of his lips. AT: “our words and songs of praise.” Modern versions have different translations of this difficult passage. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 14 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 14 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 14:3****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> Assyria cannot save us.

It is useless for us to ride horses into battle.

We will never again say, 'You are our gods'

to the idols we have made with our own hands.

Even children with no fathers look to you, Yahweh, and they find that you are kind to them."

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> Assyria will not save us;

we will not ride on horses to war.

Neither will we say anymore to the work of our hands,

'You are our gods,'

for in you the fatherless person finds compassion."

**translationWords:**

- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- save, safe
- horse
- works, deeds, work, acts
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- compassion, compassionate

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Hosea is speaking
- **to the work of our hands** - "hands" refers to people making things. AT: "to the idols we made" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **the fatherless person** - This expression stands perhaps for the entire nation. It indicates God's enormous compassion for his people.
- **finds compassion** - Here the act of God having compassion is spoken of as if it were an object that someone experiencing that compassion had found. (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 14 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 14 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 14:4-6****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> Yahweh says, "I will forgive these people for having turned away from me,

and I will love them without ceasing,

because I have decided to stop being angry at them.

<sup>5</sup> I will help the people of Israel as the dew helps the ground.

They will prosper like the lilies bloom.

They will become as strong as the cedar trees in Lebanon.

<sup>6</sup> They will be like trees whose branches spread out.

They will be as beautiful as the olive trees,

and they will please others as much as the fragrant cedar trees in Lebanon.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> "I will heal their turning away;

I will love them freely,

for my anger has turned away from him.

<sup>5</sup> I will be like the dew to Israel;

he will blossom like the lily

and take root like a cedar in Lebanon.

<sup>6</sup> His branches will spread out;

his beauty will be like the olive trees,

and his fragrance like the cedars in Lebanon.

**translationWords:**

- heal, cure
- turn, turn away, turn back
- love
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- cedar
- Lebanon
- olive

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking.
- **I will heal their turning away** - Stopping the people from turning away from God is spoken of as if he were healing them. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **their turning away** - The failure of the people to obey God is spoken of as if they had physically turned away from him. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I will be like the dew to Israel; he will blossom like the lily** - God is spoken of as if he were dew that brought needed moisture to plants, and Israel is spoken of as if it were one person, and as if he were a flower that could blossom. (See: [Simile](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **and take root like a cedar in Lebanon** - The picture of Israel in the form of a plant is continued here, but this time in the form of a tall cedar tree in Lebanon, which was known for such trees. (See: [Simile](#))
- **His branches will spread out ... like the cedars in Lebanon** - This passage continues the same image. (See: [Simile](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 14 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 14 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 14:7-8****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> They will return and live under the protection that Israel has from me;

I will protect them from hardship.

They will be successful like a field of grain that grows well, like grapevines that are growing well.

They will become as famous as the wine that people produce in the land of Lebanon.

<sup>8</sup> You people of Israel, I will completely stop you from worshiping idols.

It is I, Yahweh, who will take care of you. No idol can do that.

I am like a cypress tree that grows and stays fresh the entire year;

all your good gifts come from me.”

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> The people who live in his shade will return;

they will revive like grain

and blossom like vines.

His fame will be like the wine of Lebanon.

<sup>8</sup> Ephraim, what more have I to do with idols?

I will answer him and care for him.

I am like a cypress whose leaves are always green;

from me comes your fruit.”

**translationWords:**

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- grain
- vine
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- Lebanon
- Ephraim
- idol, idolatrous

- [cypress](#)
- [fruit, fruitful](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Yahweh is speaking.
- **The people who live in his shade will return** - The people of Israel will once again live protected by God. Israel is spoken of as living in his shade. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **they will revive like grain and blossom like vines** - Israel's new prosperity is spoken of in agricultural terms. (See: [Simile](#))
- **His fame will be like the wine of Lebanon** - Just as Lebanon's wine was famous, so Israel will be famous. AT: "People everywhere will know about the nation of Israel" (See: [Simile](#))
- **what more have I to do with idols?** - This passage signifies that God will stop the people of Israel from worshiping idols any longer. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **a cypress whose leaves are always green** - A cypress is a tree whose leaves stay green all year. This represents Yahweh and his blessings on Israel. (See: [Simile](#))
- **from me comes your fruit** - Here "fruit" represents every good thing that comes from Yahweh. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 14 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 14 Translation Questions](#)

**Hosea 14:9****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> Every wise person will understand the things about which I have written;

those who have understanding will study these things and pay careful attention to them.

The way in which Yahweh wants us to live is right.

Those who do what is right live by them.

The rebellious people, however, sin, unable to obey him.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> Who is wise that he may understand these things?

Who understands these things so that he may know them?

For the ways of Yahweh are right,

and the righteous will walk in them,

but the rebellious will stumble in them.

**translationWords:**

- wise, wisdom
- understand, understanding
- know, knowledge, make known
- Yahweh
- righteous, righteousness
- walk
- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- stumble

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Hosea the prophet is speaking.
- **Who is wise that he may understand these things? Who understands these things so that he may know them?** - The prophet uses these questions to say that wise people will understand and listen to what has been said to them. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Parallelism](#))
- **For the ways of Yahweh are right, and the righteous will walk in them** - Yahweh's commandments are spoken of as ways to walk in. (See: [Metaphor](#))



- **stumble** - Disobeying Yahweh is spoken of as if it were stumbling while walking. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hosea](#)
- [Hosea 14 General Notes](#)
- [Hosea 14 Translation Questions](#)

## translationQuestions

### Hosea 1

**Q?** What kind of wife did Yahweh tell Hosea to take for himself?

**A.** Yahweh told him to take for himself a wife who was a prostitute. [1:2]

---

**Q?** Why should Hosea call the name of his first son Jezreel?

**A.** Hosea should call his name Jezreel. For in a little while Yahweh will punish the house of Jehu for the bloodshed at Jezreel. [1:4]

---

**Q?** On whom will Yahweh have mercy?

**A.** Yahweh will have mercy on the house of Judah. [1:7]

---

**Q?** Why should Hosea call the name of his second son Lo Ammi?

**A.** Hosea should call his name Lo Ammi, for the Israelites were no longer his people. [1:9]

---

**Q?** What will be said to those who formerly were not Yahweh's people?

**A.** It will be said to them that they were people of the living God. [1:10]

---

## Hosea 2

**Q?** What will Yahweh do if Israel does not put away her prostitution?

**A.** If Israel does not put away her prostitution, Yahweh will strip her naked and show her nakedness as on the day that she was born. [2:2-3]

---

**Q?** Why will Yahweh not have any mercy on Israel's children?

**A.** Yahweh will not have any mercy on her children, for they were children of prostitution. [2:4]

---

**Q?** Why will Israel return to her first husband?

**A.** Israel will return to her first husband, for was it better for her then than it now. [2:7]

---

**Q?** Who lavished on Israel silver and gold?

**A.** Yahweh lavished on her silver and gold. [2:8]

---

**Q?** What will Yahweh do to Israel in the sight of her lovers?

**A.** Yahweh will strip her naked in the sight of her lovers. [2:10]

---

**Q?** What wages did Israel's lovers give her?

**A.** Israel's lovers gave her vines and fig trees. [2:12]

---

**Q?** How will the prostitute answer Yahweh after he goes to win her back?

**A.** She will answer him as she did in the days of her youth, as in the days that she came out of the land of Egypt. [2:15]

---

**Q?** In that day, what will Israel call Yahweh?

**A.** She will call him 'My husband,' and no longer, 'My Baal.' [2:16]

---

**Q?** What will Yahweh make his people do?

**A.** He will make them lie down in safety. [2:18]

---

**Q?** For how long will Yahweh promise to be his people's husband?

**A.** Yahweh will promise to be their husband forever. [2:19]

---

**Q?** What will the new wine and the oil answer?

**A.** The new wine and the oil will answer Jezreel. [2:22]

---

**Q?** What will Yahweh say to those who were not his people?

**A.** Yahweh will say to those who were not his people, 'You are my people.' [2:23]

---

### Hosea 3

**Q?** In what way must Hosea love his wife?

**A.** Hosea must love her just as Yahweh loves the people of Israel. [3:1]

---

**Q?** For how much did Yahweh buy Israel?

**A.** He bought her for fifteen pieces of silver and a homer and a lethek of barley. [3:2]

---

**Q?** After the people of Israel live for many days without a king, who will they seek?

**A.** After the people of Israel live for many days without a king, they will seek Yahweh their God and David their king. [3:4-5]

---

## Hosea 4

Q? Against whom did Yahweh have a lawsuit?

A. Yahweh had a lawsuit against the inhabitants of the land. [4:1]

---

Q? What was happening to every one who was living in the land?

A. Every one who was living in it was wasting away. [4:3]

---

Q? Who will stumble by night?

A. The prophets will stumble by night. [4:5]

---

Q? Why will Yahweh forget the children of the people of Israel?

A. Yahweh will forget the children of the people of Israel because they forgot the Law of God. [4:6]

---

Q? How will the people act?

A. They will act like the priests. [4:9]

---

Q? What things took away the understanding of the people?

A. Sexual promiscuity, wine, and new wine took away their understanding. [4:11]

---

Q? Why will Yahweh not punish the people's daughters when they choose to commit sexual immorality?

A. Yahweh will not punish the people's daughters when they choose to commit sexual immorality, for the men also give themselves to the prostitutes. [4:14]

---

**Q?** Where should the people not go?

**A.** They should not go to Gilgal or Beth Aven. [4:15]

---

**Q?** What did Ephraim do even when their strong drink was gone?

**A.** Ephraim continued to commit adultery even when their strong drink was gone. [4:18]

---

## Hosea 5

Q? Where did the rebels stand?

A. The rebels stood deep in slaughter. [5:2]

---

Q? What will not allow Ephraim to turn to their God?

A. Ephraim's deeds will not allow them to turn to their God. [5:4]

---

Q? Why will Israel, Ephraim, and Judah not find Yahweh?

A. Israel, Ephraim, and Judah will not find Yahweh, for he has withdrawn himself from them. [5:6]

---

Q? Who declared that Ephraim will become a desolation?

A. Yahweh declared that Ephraim will become a desolation. [5:9]

---

Q? On whom will Yahweh pour his wrath?

A. Yahweh will pour his wrath on the leaders of Judah. [5:10]

---

Q? When did Ephraim go to Assyria?

A. When Ephraim saw his sickness, then he went to Assyria. [5:13]

---

Q? For how long will Yahweh go and return to his place?

A. Yahweh will go and return to his place until Ephraim and Judah acknowledge their guilt and seek his face; until they earnestly seek him in their distress. [5:15]

---



## Hosea 6

**Q?** Although Yahweh tore his people to pieces, what will he then do?

**A.** Although he tore them to pieces, he will heal them. [6:1]

---

**Q?** When will Yahweh raise up his people?

**A.** He will raise them up on the third day. [6:2]

---

**Q?** What was the faithfulness of Ephraim and Judah like?

**A.** Their faithfulness was like a morning cloud, like the dew that goes away early. [6:4]

---

**Q?** What did God desire?

**A.** God desired faithfulness and not sacrifice, and the knowledge of him more than burnt offerings. [6:6]

---

**Q?** In what way did the priests band together to commit murder on the way to Shechem?

**A.** As gangs of robbers wait for someone, so the priests banded together to commit murder on the way to Shechem. [6:9]

---

**Q?** What was appointed to Judah when Yahweh will restore the fortunes of his people?

**A.** A harvest was appointed, when Yahweh will restore the fortunes of his people. [6:11]

---

## Hosea 7

**Q?** What did Yahweh remember?

**A.** Yahweh remembered all their evil deeds. [7:2]

---

**Q?** How did the people make the officials glad?

**A.** By their lies they made the officials glad. [7:3]

---

**Q?** What were the people's hearts like?

**A.** Their hearts were like an oven. [7:6]

---

**Q?** What did Ephraim not know?

**A.** Ephraim did not know that foreigners devoured his strength or that gray hairs were sprinkled on him. [7:9]

---

**Q?** How was Ephraim like a dove?

**A.** Ephraim was like a dove, gullible and without sense. [7:11]

---

**Q?** Why did Yahweh not rescue the people?

**A.** Yahweh did not rescue the people because they spoke lies against him. [7:13]

---

**Q?** What did the people do to obtain grain and new wine?

**A.** They cut themselves to obtain grain and new wine. [7:14]

---

**Q?** Why will the officials fall?

**A.** The officials will fall because of the wickedness of their tongues. [7:16]

---

## Hosea 8

**Q?** Why was an eagle coming over the house of Yahweh?

**A.** An eagle was coming over the house of Yahweh because the people broke his covenant and rebelled against his Law. [8:1]

---

**Q?** With what did the people make idols for themselves?

**A.** With their silver and gold they made idols for themselves. [8:4]

---

**Q?** What happened when people sowed the wind?

**A.** People sowed the wind and reaped the whirlwind. [8:7]

---

**Q?** What will Yahweh do even though the people hired lovers among the nations?

**A.** Even though they hired lovers among the nations, Yahweh will gather them together. [8:10]

---

**Q?** If Yahweh wrote down his Law for them ten thousand times, how would they view it?

**A.** If Yahweh wrote down his Law for them ten thousand times, they would view it as something strange to them. [8:12]

---

**Q?** How will Yahweh punish the people's sins?

**A.** He will punish their sins by returning them to Egypt. [8:13]

---

## Hosea 9

**Q?** What did Israel love to pay?

**A.** Israel loved to pay the wages a prostitute required on all the threshing floors. [9:1]

---

**Q?** What will Ephraim's sacrifices be to them like?

**A.** Their sacrifices will be to them like mourners' food: all who eat it will be defiled. [9:4]

---

**Q?** If the people escaped from destruction, what will happen?

**A.** If the people escaped from destruction, Egypt will gather them, and Memphis will bury them. [9:6]

---

**Q?** What days were coming?

**A.** The days for punishment were coming. The days for retribution were coming. [9:7]

---

**Q?** What was on the prophet's paths?

**A.** A bird's snare was on his paths. [9:8]

---

**Q?** After the fathers went to Baal Peor, what did they become like?

**A.** After the fathers went to Baal Peor, they became as detestable as the idol they loved. [9:10]

---

**Q?** What will happen to Ephraim's glory?

**A.** Ephraim's glory will fly away like a bird. [9:11]

---

**Q?** What will Yahweh give Ephraim?

**A.** Yahweh will give them a miscarrying womb and breasts that give no milk. [9:14]

---

**Q?** Why will Yahweh drive Ephraim out of his house?

**A.** Because of their sinful deeds, Yahweh will drive them out of his house. [9:15]

---

**Q?** What would happen even if Ephraim had children?

**A.** Even if they had children, Yahweh would put their beloved children to death. [9:16]

---

## Hosea 10

Q? What happened as Israel's fruit increased?

A. As his fruit increased, the more altars he built. [10:1]

---

Q? How did Israel make covenants?

A. Israel made covenants by swearing falsely. [10:4]

---

Q? Why will the inhabitants of Samaria be carried to Assyria?

A. They will be carried to Assyria for a present for the great king. [10:6]

---

Q? What will grow over the altar?

A. Thorns and thistles will grow over the altar. [10:8]

---

Q? Why will Yahweh put a yoke on Ephraim's fair neck?

A. Because Ephraim was a trained heifer that loves to thresh the grain, Yahweh will put a yoke on her fair neck. [10:11]

---

Q? For how long should the people seek Yahweh?

A. They should seek Yahweh until he comes and rains righteousness on them. [10:12]

---

Q? What happened to mothers with their children when Shalman destroyed Beth Arbel?

A. When Shalman destroyed Beth Arbel, mothers were dashed to pieces with their children. [10:14]

---

## Hosea 11

**Q?** From where did Yahweh call Israel when Israel was a young man?

**A.** When Israel was a young man, Yahweh called him out of Egypt. [11:1]

---

**Q?** Who lifted Ephraim up by their arms?

**A.** Yahweh lifted them up by their arms. [11:3]

---

**Q?** What were Yahweh's people determined to do?

**A.** Yahweh's people were determined to turn away from him. [11:7]

---

**Q?** Why will Yahweh not again destroy Ephraim?

**A.** Yahweh will not again destroy Ephraim, for he is God and not a man. [11:9]

---

**Q?** How will the people come?

**A.** The people will come trembling from the west like a bird from Egypt, like a dove from the land of Assyria. [11:10-11]

---

**Q?** Who was still faithful to God?

**A.** Judah was still faithful to God. [11:12]

---

## Hosea 12

Q? What did Yahweh have against Judah?

A. Yahweh had a lawsuit against Judah. [12:2]

---

Q? What did Jacob do in the womb?

A. In the womb, Jacob grasped his brother by the heel. [12:3]

---

Q? For what should the people wait?

A. They should wait continually for their God. [12:6]

---

Q? What will no one find in Ephraim's work?

A. In all Ephraim's work no one will find any sin in him, anything that would be sin. [12:8]

---

Q? How long had Yahweh been with the people?

A. Yahweh had been with them from the land of Egypt. [12:9]

---

Q? What will Gilgal's altars be like?

A. Gilgal's altars will be like heaps of stone in the furrows of the fields. [12:11]

---

Q? What did Yahweh do by a prophet?

A. Yahweh brought Israel out of Egypt by a prophet, and by a prophet he took care of them. [12:13]

---



### Hosea 13

Q? Why did Ephraim become guilty?

A. He became guilty because of Baal worship. [13:1]

---

Q? What happens to chaff?

A. Chaff is driven by the wind away from a threshing floor. [13:3]

---

Q? What happened when Yahweh's people were filled?

A. When Yahweh's people were filled, their heart became lifted up and they forgot him. [13:6]

---

Q? Like what will Yahweh attack his people?

A. He will attack them like a bear that is robbed of her cubs. [13:8]

---

Q? Why was Israel's destruction coming?

A. Israel's destruction was coming because they were against Yahweh, their helper. [13:9]

---

Q? When it was time for Ephraim to be born, what happened?

A. When it was time for Ephraim to be born, he did not come out of the womb. [13:13]

---

Q? What did Yahweh want brought to him?

A. Yahweh wanted death's plagues and Sheol's destruction brought to him. [13:14]

---

Q? What will Ephraim's enemy plunder?

A. His enemy will plunder the storehouse of every precious object. [13:15]

---

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What will happen to Samaria's young children?

**A.** Their young children will be dashed to pieces. [13:16]

\_\_\_\_\_

## Hosea 14

**Q?** Why did Israel fall?

**A.** Israel fell because of their sin. [14:1]

---

**Q?** Why will Israel not say to the work of their hands, “You are our gods”?

**A.** Israel will not say to the work of their hands, “You are our gods,” for in Yahweh the fatherless person finds compassion. [14:3]

---

**Q?** When will Yahweh heal Israel?

**A.** Yahweh will heal them when they turn back to him. [14:4]

---

**Q?** What will the people’s fame be like?

**A.** Their fame will be like the wine of Lebanon. [14:7]

---

**Q?** Who will stumble in the ways of Yahweh?

**A.** The rebellious will stumble in them. [14:9]

---

## translationWords

### twelve tribes of Israel

**Definition:**

The term, “twelve tribes of Israel” refers to the twelve sons of Jacob and their descendants.

- Jacob was Abraham’s grandson. God later changed Jacob’s name to Israel.
- These are the names of the tribes: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Dan, Naphtali, Gad, Asher, Issachar, Zebulun, Joseph and Benjamin.
- The descendants of Levi did not inherit any land in Canaan because they were a tribe of priests who were set apart to serve God and his people.
- Joseph received a double inheritance of land, which was passed on to his two sons, Ephraim and Manasseh.
- There are several places in the Bible where the list of the twelve tribes are slightly different. Sometimes Levi, Joseph, or Dan is left out of the list and sometimes Joseph’s two sons Ephraim and Manasseh are included in the list.

(See also: [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heritage](#), [heir](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [tribe](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## **accuse, accusation, accuser**

### **Definition:**

The terms “accuse” and “accusation” refer to blaming someone for doing something wrong. A person who accuses others is an “accuser.”

- A false accusation is when a charge against someone is not true, as when Jesus was falsely accused of wrongdoing by the leaders of the Jews.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Satan is called “the accuser.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## acknowledge

### Facts:

The term “acknowledge” means to give proper recognition to something or someone.

- To acknowledge God also involves acting in a way that shows that what he says is true.
- People who acknowledge God will show it by obeying him, which brings glory to his name.
- To acknowledge something means to believe that it is true, with actions and words that confirm that.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of acknowledging that something is true, “acknowledge” could be translated as “admit” or “declare” or “confess to be true” or “believe.”
- When referring to acknowledging a person, this term could be translated as, “accept” or “recognize the value of” or “tell others that (the person) is faithful.”
- In the context of acknowledging God, this could be translated as, “believe and obey God” or “declare who God is” or “tell other people about how great God is” or “confess that what God says and does is true.”

(See also: [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [glory](#), [glorious](#), [salvation](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Adam

### Facts:

Adam was the first person whom God created. He and his wife Eve were made in the image of God.

- God formed Adam from dirt and breathed life into him.
- Adam's name sounds similar to the Hebrew word for "red dirt" or "ground."
- The name "Adam" is the same as the Old Testament word for "mankind" or "human being."
- All people are descendants of Adam and Eve.
- Adam and Eve disobeyed God. This separated them from God and caused sin and death to come into the world.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [Eve](#), [image of God](#), [image](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-09]** Then God said, "Let us make human beings in our image to be like us."
- **[01-10]** This man's name was **Adam**. God planted a garden where **Adam** could live, and put him there to care for it.
- **[01-12]** Then God said, "It is not good for man to be alone." But none of the animals could be **Adam's** helper.
- **[02-11]** And God clothed **Adam** and Eve with animal skins.
- **[02-12]** So God sent **Adam** and Eve away from the beautiful garden.
- **[49-08]** When **Adam** and Eve sinned, it affected all of their descendants.
- **[50-16]** Because **Adam** and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.
-

## adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress

### Definition:

The term “adultery” refers to a sin that involves a married person having sexual relations with someone who is not his spouse. The term “adulterous” describes this kind of behavior or the person who commits this sin.

- The term “adulterer” refers generally to any person who commits adultery.
- Sometimes the term “adulteress” is used to specify that it was a woman who committed adultery.
- Adultery breaks the promises that a husband and wife made to each other in their covenant of marriage.
- God commanded the Israelites to not commit adultery.
- The term “adulterous” is often used in a figurative sense to describe the people of Israel as being unfaithful to God, especially when they worshiped false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If the target language does not have one word that means “adultery,” this term could be translated with a phrase such as, “having sexual relations with someone else’s wife” or “being intimate with another person’s spouse.”
- Some languages may have an indirect way of talking about adultery, such as “sleeping with someone else’s spouse” or “being unfaithful to one’s wife.” (See: [euphemism](#))
- When “adulterous” is used in a figurative sense, it is best to translate it literally in order to communicate God’s view of his disobedient people as being compared to an unfaithful spouse. If this does not communicate accurately in the target language, the figurative use of “adulterous” could be translated as “unfaithful” or “immoral” or “like an unfaithful spouse.”

(See also: [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#), [covenant](#), [fornication](#), [sexual immorality](#), , [have sex with](#), [have relations with](#), [sleep with](#), [lovemaking](#), [unfaithful](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-06]**”Do not commit **adultery**.”
- **[28-02]** Do not commit **adultery**.
- **[34-07]**”The religious leader prayed like this, ”Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men—such as robbers, unjust men, **adulterers**, or even like that tax collector.””



## **adversary, enemy**

### **Definition:**

An “adversary” is a person or group who is opposed to someone or something. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- An adversary can be a person who tries to oppose you or harm you.
- A nation can be called an “adversary” when it fights against another nation.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- Adversary may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See: [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#) )

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Ahaz

### Definition:

Ahaz was a wicked king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah from 732 BC to 716 BC. This was about 140 years before the time when many people in Israel and Judah were taken as captives to Babylonia.

- While he was ruling Judah, Ahaz had an altar built for worshipping the false gods of the Assyrians, which caused the people to turn away from the one true God, Yahweh.
- King Ahaz was 20 years old when he started to rule over Judah, and he ruled for 16 years.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## altar

### Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living nearby the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-14]** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **[05-08]** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **[13-09]** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **[16-06]** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

## angel, archangel

### Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God is by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh” has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include, “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include, “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh who looked like an angel.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [chief](#), [head](#), [messenger](#), [Michael](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [02-12] God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- [22-03] The **angel** responded to Zechariah, “I was sent by God to bring you this good news.”
- [23-06] Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you.”
- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God...
- [25-08] Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- [38-12] Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- [38-15] “I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me.”

## angry, anger

### Definition:

To “be angry” or to “have anger” means to be very displeased, irritated and upset about something or against someone.

- When people get angry, it often is sinful and selfish, but sometimes it is righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
- God’s anger (also called “wrath”) expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
- The phrase, “provoke to anger” means “cause to be angry.”

(See also: [wrath](#), [fury](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **appoint, appointed**

### **Definition:**

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in, “appointed to eternal life.” This means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include, “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as, “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as, “be chosen.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Aram, Aramean, Aramaic

### Definition:

“Aram” is the name of two men in the Old Testament. It was also the name of a region northeast of Canaan, where modern-day Syria is located.

- The people living in Aram became known as “Arameans” and spoke “Aramaic.” Jesus and other Jews of his time also spoke Aramaic.
- One of Shem’s sons was named Aram. Another man named Aram was a cousin of Rebekah. It is probable that the region of Aram was named after one of these two men.
- Aram later became known by the Greek name, “Syria.”
- The term “Paddan Aram” means “plain of Aram” and was located in the northern part of Aram.
- Some of Abraham’s relatives lived in the city of Haran, which was located in “Paddan Aram.”
- In the Old Testament, sometimes the terms “Aram” and “Paddan Aram” refer to the same region.
- The term “Aram Naharaim” may mean “Aram of Two Rivers.” This region was located in the northern part of Mesopotamia and was to the east of “Paddan Aram.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Mesopotamia](#), [Aram Naharaim](#), [Paddan Aram](#), [Rebekah](#), [Shem](#), [Syria](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

### Facts:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[20-02]** So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the **Assyrian Empire**, a powerful, cruel nation. The **Assyrians** killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **[20-03]** The **Assyrians** gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to **Assyria**.
- **[20-04]** Then the **Assyrians** brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

## **astray, go astray, led astray, stray**

### **Definition:**

The terms “stray” and “go astray” mean to disobey God’s will. People who are “led astray” have allowed other people or circumstances to influence them to disobey God.

- The word “astray” gives a picture of leaving a clear path or a place of safety to go down a wrong and dangerous path.
- Sheep who leave the pasture of their shepherd have “strayed.” God compares sinful people to sheep who have left him and “gone astray.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The phrase “go astray” could be translated as, “go away from God” or “take a wrong path away from God’s will” or “stop obeying God” or “live in a way that goes away from God.”
- To “lead someone astray” could be translated as, “cause someone to disobey God” or “influence someone to stop obeying God” or “cause someone to follow you down a wrong path.”

(See: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Baal

### Facts:

“Baal” means “lord” or “master” and was the name of the primary false god that was worshiped by the Canaanites.

- There were also local false gods that had “Baal” as part of their names, such as “Baal of Peor.” Sometimes all these gods together are referred to as “the Baals.”
- Some people had names that included the word “Baal” in them.
- The worship of Baal included evil practices such as sacrificing children and using prostitutes.
- At different time periods throughout their history, the Israelites also became deeply involved in Baal worship, following the example of the pagan nations around them.
- During the reign of King Ahab, God’s prophet Elijah set up a test to prove to the people that Baal does not exist and that Yahweh is the only true God. As a result, the prophets of Baal were destroyed and the people started worshiping Yahweh again.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [asherah](#), [Elijah](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [prostitute](#), [harlot](#), [whore](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [19-02] Ahab was an evil man who encouraged people to worship a false god named **Baal**.
- [19-06] All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 prophets of **Baal**, came to Mount Carmel. Elijah said to the people, “How long will you keep changing your mind? If Yahweh is God, serve him! If **Baal** is God, serve him!”
- [19-07] Then Elijah said to the prophets of **Baal**, “Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire.
- [19-08] Then the prophets of **Baal** prayed to **Baal**, “Hear us, O **Baal**!”
- [19-12] So the people captured the prophets of **Baal**. Then Elijah took them away from there and killed them.

## barley

### Definition:

The term “barley” refers to a kind of grain that is used to make bread.

- The barley plant has a long stalk with a head at the top where the seeds or grains grow.
- Barley does well in warmer weather so it is often harvested in spring or summer.
- When barley is threshed, the edible seeds are separated from the worthless chaff.
- Barley grain is ground up into flour, which is then mixed with water or oil to make bread.
- If barley is not known, this could be translated as “grain called barley” or “barley grain.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [grain](#), [thresh](#), [threshing](#), [wheat](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## beast

### Facts:

In the Bible, the term “beast” is often just another way of saying “animal.”

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term “livestock” is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include, “creature” or “created thing” or “animal” or “wild animal,” depending on the context.

(See also: [authority](#), [Daniel](#), [livestock](#), [nation](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#))

- [Prev chunk: publish-current](#)
- [Next chunk: review-publish](#) | [publish-current](#)

### Bible References:

Waiting

## beg, beggar

### Definition:

The term “beg” means to urgently ask someone for something. It often refers to asking for money, but it is also commonly used to refer to pleading for something.

- Often people beg or plead when they strongly need something, but don’t know if the other person will give them what they ask for.
- A “beggar” is someone who regularly sits or stands in a public place to ask people for money.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, “plead” or “urgently ask” or “demand money” or “regularly ask for money.”

(See also: [plead](#), [pleading](#), [plea](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[10-04]** God sent frogs all over Egypt. Pharaoh **begged** Moses to take away the frogs.
- **[29-08]** ”The king called the servant and said, ”You wicked servant! I forgave your debt because you **begged** me.”
- **[32-07]** The demons **begged** Jesus, “Please do not send us out of this region!” There was a herd of pigs feeding on a nearby hill. So, the demons **begged** Jesus, “Please send us into the pigs instead!”
- **[32-10]** The man who used to have the demons **begged** to go along with Jesus.
- **[35-11]** His father came out and **begged** him to come and celebrate with them, but he refused.”
- **[44-01]** One day, Peter and John were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was **begging** for money.

## **beloved**

### **Definition:**

The term “beloved” is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term “beloved” literally means “loved (one)” or “(who is) loved.”
- God refers to Jesus as his “beloved Son.”
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as “beloved.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could also be translated as “loved” or “loved one” or “well-loved” or “very dear.”
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as “my dear friend” or “my close friend.” In English it is natural to say, “my dear friend, Paul” or “Paul, who is my dear friend.” Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word “beloved” comes from the word for God’s love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: [love](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Benjamin

### Facts:

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, “son of my right hand.”

- He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
- The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [Rachel](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## Bethel

### Facts:

Bethel was a city located just north of Jerusalem in the land of Canaan. It was formerly called “Luz.”

- After receiving God’s promises for the first time, Abram (Abraham) built an altar to God near Bethel. The actual name of the city was not yet Bethel at that time, but it was usually referred to as “Bethel” which was better known.
- When fleeing from his brother Esau, Jacob stayed overnight near this city and slept outdoors on the ground there. While he was sleeping, he had a dream showing angels going up and down a ladder to heaven.
- This city did not have the name “Bethel” until after Jacob named it that. To make this clear, some translations may translate it as “Luz (later called Bethel)” in the passages about Abraham, as well as when Jacob first arrives there (before he changed the name).
- Bethel is mentioned often in the Old Testament and was a place where many important events happened.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [altar Jacob](#), [Israel Jerusalem](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **biblical time: day**

### **Definition:**

The term “day” literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

- For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
- Sometimes the term “day” is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “last days.”
- Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate “day” nonfiguratively.
- Other translations of “day” could include, “time” or “season” or “occasion” or “event,” depending on the context.

(See also: [day of the Lord](#), [day of Yahweh](#), [judgment day](#), [last day](#), [last days](#), [latter days](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## blood

### Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- Through his death on the cross, Jesus’ blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See: [flesh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-03]** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **[10-03]** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **[11-05]** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **[13-09]** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **[48-10]** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

## **bloodshed**

### **Definition:**

The term “bloodshed” refers to the death of human beings due to murder, war, or some other violent act.

- This term literally means “shedding of blood,” which refers to when blood comes out of a person’s body from an open wound.
- The term “bloodshed” is often used to refer to widespread killing of people.
- It is also used as a general reference to the sin of murder.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- “the bloodshed” could be translated as, “the killing of people” or “the many people who were killed.”
- “through bloodshed” could also be translated as, “by killing people.”
- “innocent bloodshed” could be translated as “killing innocent people.”
- “bloodshed follows bloodshed” could be translated as, “they keep killing people” or “the killing of people goes on and on” or “they have killed many people and continue to do that” or “people keep killing other people.”
- Another figurative use, “bloodshed will pursue you” could be translated as, “your people will continue to experience bloodshed” or “your people will keep being killed” or “your people will continue to be at war with other nations and people will keep dying.”

(See also: [blood slaughter](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **bind, bond, bound**

### **Definition:**

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as, “to restrain” or “to prevent” or “to keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase, “bond of peace” means, “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as, “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as, “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as, “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [peace](#), [peaceful](#), [prison](#), [prisoner](#), [imprison](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#), [vow](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## **bow, bow down**

### **Definition:**

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [humility](#), [worship](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**bow and arrow****Definition:**

This is a type of weapon that consists of shooting arrows from a stringed bow. In Bible times it was used for fighting against enemies and for killing animals for food.

- The bow is made out of wood, bone, metal, or other hard material, such as a deer's antler. It has a curved shape and is strung tightly with a string, cord, or vine.
- An arrow is a thin shaft with a sharp, pointed head on one end. In ancient times, the arrows could be made of a variety of materials such as wood, bone, stone, or metal.
- Bows and arrows are commonly used by hunters and warriors.
- The term "arrow" is also sometimes used figuratively in the Bible to refer to enemy attacks or divine judgment.

**Bible References:**

Waiting



## bread

### Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means, “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast.
- Bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. In the Bible this is called “unleavened bread” and was used for the Jews’ passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The term “bread of the presence” referred to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The figurative term, “bread from heaven” referred to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert.
- Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”
- When Jesus and his disciples were eating the Passover meal together before his death, he compared the unleavened Passover bread to his body which would be wounded and killed on a cross.
- Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”

(See also: [Passover](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [unleavened bread](#), [Festival of Unleavened Bread](#), [yeast](#), [leaven](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## brother

### Definition:

The term “brother” usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include, “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as, “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be, “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [the twelve](#), [the eleven](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **burnt offering, offering by fire**

### **Definition:**

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](#), [atonement](#), [atone](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## bury, buried, burial

### Definition:

The term “bury” usually refers to putting a dead body into a hole or other burial place. The term “burial” is the act of burying something or can be used to describe a place used to bury something.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” are all ways to refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means, “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: [Jericho](#), [tomb](#), [grave](#), [burial place](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## call, calling, called, call out

### Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” literally means to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. There are also several figurative meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- The term “called” is used in the Bible to mean that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of calling someone a name. For example, “He is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God knows a person’s name personally and has specifically chosen him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know your name and have chosen you.”

(See: [pray](#), [prayer](#) )

**Bible References:**

Waiting

{{tag>publish ktlink}}

## cast out, drive out, throw out

### Definition:

To “cast out” or “drive out” someone or something means to force that person or thing to go away.

- The term “cast” means the same thing as “throw.” To cast a net means to throw the net into the water.
- In a figurative sense, “cast out” or “cast away” someone can mean to reject that person and send him away.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, “force out” or “send away” or “get rid of.”
- To “cast out demons” could be translated as “cause the demons to leave” or “drive the evil spirits out” or “expel the demons” or “command the demon to come out.”

(See also: [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [demon-possessed](#), [lots](#), [casting lots](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting

## cedar

### Definition:

The term “cedar” refers to a large fir tree which normally has reddish-brown wood. Like other firs, it has cones and needle-like leaves.

- The Old Testament often mentions cedar trees in connection with Lebanon, where they grew plentifully.
- Cedar wood was used in the construction of the Jerusalem temple.
- It was also used for sacrifices and purification offerings.

(See also: [fir](#), [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



**chaff****Definition:**

Chaff is a dry protective covering of a grain seed. The chaff is not good for food so people separate it from the seed and throw it away.

- Often, the chaff is separated from the seed by throwing the heads of grain up into the air. The wind blows the chaff away and the seed falls on the ground. This process is called “winnowing.”
- In the Bible, this term is also used figuratively to refer to evil people and evil, worthless things.

(See also: [grain](#), [wheat](#), [winnow](#), [sift](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## children, child

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “child” is often used to generally refer to someone who is young in age, including an infant. The term “children” is the plural form and also has several figurative uses.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
  - children of the light
  - children of obedience
  - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to people who are like spiritual children. For example, “children of God” refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as, “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as, “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as, “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [promise](#), [son](#), spirit, spiritual, believer, beloved other)

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **compassion, compassionate**

### **Definition:**

The term “compassion” refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A “compassionate” person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word “compassion” usually includes caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.
- In Paul’s letter to the Colossians, he tells them to “clothe themselves with compassion.” He is instructing them to care about people and to actively help others who are in need.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The literal meaning of “compassion” is “bowels of mercy.” This is an expression that means “mercy” or “pity.” Other languages may have their own expression that means this.
- Ways of translating “compassion” could include, “a deep caring for” or “helpful mercy.”
- The term “compassionate” could also be translated as, “caring and helpful” or “deeply loving and merciful.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## conceive, conception

### Definition:

The terms “conceive” and “conception” usually refer to becoming pregnant with a child. It can also be used for animals that become pregnant.

- The phrase “conceive a child” could be translated as, “become pregnant” or some other term that is an acceptable way of referring to this.
- The related term “conception” could be translated as, “beginning of a pregnancy” or “moment of becoming pregnant.”
- These terms can also refer to creating something or thinking of something, such as an idea, a plan, or a task. Ways to translate this could include, “think of” or “plan” or “create,” depending on the context.
- Sometimes this term can be used figuratively as in, “when sin is conceived” which means “when sin is first thought of” or “at the very start of a sin” or “when a sin first begins.”

(See also: [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#), [womb](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **confess, confession**

### **Definition:**

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A “confession” is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term “confess” can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confess” could include, “admit” or “testify” or “declare” or “acknowledge” or “affirm.”
- Different ways to translate “confession” could be, “declaration” or “testimony” or “statement about what we believe” or “admitting sin.”

(See also: [faith](#), [testimony](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## corrupt, corruption

### Definition:

The terms “corrupt” and “corruption” refer to a state of affairs in which people have become ruined, immoral, or dishonest.

- The term “corrupt” literally means to be “bent” or “broken” morally.
- A person who is corrupt has turned away from truth and is doing things that are dishonest or immoral.
- To corrupt someone means to influence that person to do dishonest and immoral things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to corrupt” could be translated as “to influence to do evil” or “to cause to be immoral.”
- A corrupt person could be described as a person “who has become immoral” or “who practices evil.”
- This term could also be translated as “bad” or “immoral” or “evil.”
- The term corruption could be translated as “the practice of evil” or “evil” or “immorality.”

(See also: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## covenant

### Definition:

A covenant is a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example when God established his covenant with mankind, promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.

(See also: , [New Covenant](#), [promise](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-09]** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **[05-04]** “I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac.”
- **[06-04]** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.

- [07-10] The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob.”
- [13-02] God said to Moses and the people of Israel, ”If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation.”
- [13-04] Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- [15-13] Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.



## **covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love**

### **Definition:**

This term is used to describe God's commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to his people.

- God made promises to the Israelites in formal agreements called "covenants."
- The "covenant faithfulness" or "covenant loyalty" of Yahweh refers to the fact that he keeps his promises to his people.
- God faithfulness to keep his covenant promises is an expression of his grace toward his people.
- The term "loyalty" is another word that refers to being committed and dependable to do and say what has been promised and what will benefit someone else.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The way this term is translated will also depend on how the terms "covenant" and "faithfulness" are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term could include, "faithful love" or "loyal, committed love" or "loving dependability."

(See also: [covenant](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [grace](#), [gracious](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [people of God](#), [my people](#), [promise](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**cow, calf, bull, cattle****Definition:**

The term , “cattle” refers to a kind of large, four-legged farm animal that eats grass and is primarily raised for its meat and milk.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow”, the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- Sometimes the term “cow” is used in a general way to refer to all kinds of cattle.
- In some cultures, cattle are traded in exchange for goods. Sometimes they are used as gifts given to the parents of a young woman a man desires to marry.
- In the Bible, the Jewish people used cattle for sacrifices, especially a certain type called the red heifer.
- A “heifer” is a cow that has not yet had a baby.
- An “ox” is a special type of bull that is used for agricultural work, like pulling a plow.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [heifer](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#), [yoke](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## crime, criminal

### Definition:

The term “crime” usually refers to a sin that involves breaking the law of a country or state. The term “criminal” refers to someone who has committed a crime.

- Types of crimes include such things as killing a person or stealing someone’s property.
- A criminal is usually captured and kept in some form of captivity such as a prison.
- In Bible times, some criminals became fugitives, wandering from place to place to escape people who wanted to harm them out of revenge for their crime.

(See also: [fugitive](#), [thief](#), [thieves](#), [robber](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## curse, cursed

### Definition:

The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as, “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as, “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as, “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- “Cursed be the day I was born” could also be translated as, “I am so miserable it would have been better not to be born.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-09]** God said to the snake, “You are **cursed!**”
- **[02-11]** “Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food.”
- **[04-04]** “I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you.”
- **[39-07]** Then Peter vowed, saying, “May God **curse** me if I know this man!”
- **[50-16]** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

**cut off****Definition:**

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, “to cut off” could be translated as, “to destroy” or “to send away” or “to separate from” or “to destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## **cypress**

### **Definition:**

The term “cypress” refers to a kind of fir tree that was plentiful in the regions where people lived in Bible times, especially countries bordering the Mediterranean Sea.

- Cyprus and Lebanon are two places that are specifically mentioned in the Bible as having many cypress trees.
- The wood that Noah used to build the ark may have been cypress.
- Because cypress wood is sturdy and long-lasting, it was used by ancient peoples for building boats and other structures.

(See also: [ark](#), [Cyprus](#), [fir](#), [Lebanon](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## David

### Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well-known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Goliath](#), [Philistines](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-02]** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **[17-03]** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **[17-04]** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **[17-05]** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **[17-06]** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **[17-09]** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **[17-13]** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

## death, die, dead

### Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

### 1. Physical death

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person’s spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

### 2. Spiritual death

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression that refers to death in the target language.
- In some languages, “to die” may be expressed as “to not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as “to pass away” in English. However in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, physical life and death are often compared to spiritual life and death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and spiritual death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “spiritual death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression, “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as, “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression, “put to death” could also be translated as, “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”



(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faith](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[01-11]** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **[02-11]** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **[07-10]** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **[37-05]** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **[40-08]** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **[43-07]** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **[48-02]** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **[50-17]** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.
-

## deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive

### Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit.”

- Another term, “deception” also refers to the act of causing someone to believe something that is not true.
- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms, “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as, “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as, “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated by “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See: [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish review}}

## **declare, declaration**

### **Definition:**

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something.

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by, “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as, “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase, “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as, “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## decree

### Definition:

A decree is a proclamation or law that is publicly declared to all the people.

- God's laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
- Like laws and commands, decrees must be obeyed.
- An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.
- To decree something means to give an order that must be obeyed. This could be translated as, "to order" or "to command" or "to formally require" or "to publicly make a law."
- Something that is "decreed" to happen means that this "will definitely happen" or "has been decided upon and will not be changed" or "declared absolutely that this will happen."

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [declare](#), [declaration](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **defile, be defiled**

### **Definition:**

The terms “defile” and “be defiled” refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as “unclean” and “unholy.”
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “defile” can also be translated as “cause to be unclean” or “cause to be unrighteous” or “cause to be ritually unacceptable.”
- To “be defiled” could be translated as “become unclean” or “be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)” or “become ritually unacceptable.”

(See also: [unclean](#), [clean](#), [cleanse](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **desert, wilderness**

### **Definition:**

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as “wilderness.”
- “Wilderness” conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as “deserted place” or “remote place” or “uninhabited place.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **desolate, desolation**

### **Definition:**

The terms “desolate” and “desolation” refer to destroying an inhabited region so that it becomes uninhabited.

- When referring to a person, the term “desolate” describes a condition of ruin, loneliness, and grief.
- The term “desolation” is the state or condition of being desolated.
- If a field where crops are growing is made desolate, it means that something has destroyed the crops, such as insects or an invading army.
- A “desolate region” refers to an area of land where few people live because few crops or other vegetation grow there.
- A “desolate land” or “wilderness” was often where outcasts (such as lepers) and dangerous animals lived.
- If a city is “made desolate” it means that its buildings and goods have been destroyed or stolen, and its people have been killed or captured. The city becomes “empty” and “ruined.” This is similar to the meaning of “devastate” or “devastated,” but with more emphasis on the emptiness.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “ruined” or “destroyed” or “laid waste” or “lonely and outcast” or “deserted.”

(See also: [desert](#), [wilderness](#), [devastate](#), [devastation](#), [ruin](#), [ruins](#), [waste](#), [wasteland](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## detestable, detest

### Facts:

The term “detestable” describes something that should be disliked and rejected. To “detest” something means to strongly dislike it.

- Often the Bible talks about detesting evil. This means to hate evil and reject it.
- God used the word “detestable” to describe the evil practices of those who worshiped false gods.
- The Israelites were commanded to “detest” the sinful, immoral acts that some of the neighboring people groups practiced.
- God called all wrong sexual acts “detestable.”
- Divination, sorcery, and child sacrifice were all “detestable” to God.
- The term “detest” could be translated as, “strongly reject” or “hate” or “regard as very evil.”
- The term “detestable” could also be translated as “horribly evil” or “disgusting” or “deserving rejection.”
- When applied to the righteous being “detestable to” the wicked, this could be translated as “considered very undesirable to” or “distasteful to” or “rejected by.”
- God told the Israelites to “detest” certain kinds of animals that God had declared to be “unclean” and not suitable for food. This could also be translated as “strongly dislike” or “reject” or “regard as unacceptable.”

(See also: [divination](#), [diviner](#), [soothsaying](#), [soothsayer](#), [unclean](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



**devastate, devastation****Definition:**

The term “devastated” or “devastation” refers to having one’s property or land ruined or destroyed. It also often includes destroying or capturing the people living on that land.

- This refers to a very severe and complete destruction.
- For example, the city of Sodom was devastated by God as punishment for the sins of the people living there.
- The term “devastation” can also include causing great emotional grief resulting from the punishment or destruction.

**Translation Suggestions**

- The term “devastate” could be translated as “completely destroy” or “completely ruin.”
- Depending on the context, “devastation” could be translated as “complete destruction” or “total ruin” or “overwhelming grief” or “disaster.”

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## **devour**

### **Definition:**

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

(See also: other)

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **discipline, self-discipline**

### **Definition:**

The term “discipline” refers to training people to obey a set of guidelines for moral behavior.

- Parents discipline their children by providing moral guidance and direction for them and teaching them to obey.
- Similarly, God disciplines his children to help them produce healthy spiritual fruit in their lives, such as joy, love, and patience.
- Discipline involves instruction regarding how to live to please God, as well as punishment for behavior that is against God’s will.
- Self-discipline is the process of applying moral and spiritual principles to one’s own life.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “discipline” could be translated as, “train and instruct” or “morally guide” or “punish for wrongdoing.”
- The noun, “discipline” could be translated as “moral training” or “punishment” or “moral correction” or “moral guidance and instruction.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **disgrace, disgraceful**

### **Facts:**

The term “disgrace” refers to a loss of honor and respect.

- When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- The term “disgraceful” is used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame.
- For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or dishonoring.”

(See also: [dishonor](#), [dishonorable](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [shame](#), [shameful](#), [ashamed](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **donkey, mule**

### **Definition:**

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

u

## dove, pigeon

### Definition:

Doves and pigeons are two kinds of small, gray-brown birds that look similar. A dove is often thought of as being lighter in color, almost white.

- Some languages have two different names for them, while others use the same name for both.
- Doves and pigeons were used in sacrifices to God, especially for people who could not afford to buy a larger animal.
- A dove brought the leaf of an olive tree to Noah when the flood waters were going down.
- Doves sometimes symbolize purity, innocence, or peace.
- If doves or pigeons are not known in the language area where the translation is being done, this term could be translated as “a small grayish brown bird called a dove” or “a small gray or brown bird, similar to a (name of local bird)”.
- If both a dove and a pigeon are referred to in the same verse, it is best to use two different words for these birds, if possible.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [olive](#), [innocent](#), [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## eagle

### Definition:

An eagle is a very large, powerful bird of prey that eats small animals such as fish, mice, snakes, and chickens.

- The Bible compares the speed and strength of an army to how fast and suddenly an eagle swoops down to catch its prey.
- Isaiah states that those who trust in the Lord will soar as an eagle does. This is figurative language used to describe the freedom and strength that comes from trusting and obeying God.
- In the book of Daniel, King Nebuchadnezzar's hair length was compared to the length of an eagle's feathers, which can be more than 50 centimeters long.

(See: [Daniel](#), [free](#), [freedom](#), [liberty](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## earth, earthly

### Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- The expressions, “let the earth be glad” and “He will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as, “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as, “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include, “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## Egypt, Egyptian

### Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Herod the Great](#), [Joseph \(NT\)](#), [Nile River](#), [River of Egypt](#), [patriarchs](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-04]** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **[08-08]** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **[08-11]** So Jacob sent his older sons to **Egypt** to buy food.
- **[08-14]** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **[09-01]** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

## ephod

### Definition:

An ephod was an apron-like garment worn by the Israelite priests. It had two parts, front and back, that were joined together at the shoulders and tied around the waist with a cloth belt.

- One kind of ephod was made of plain linen and was worn by the ordinary priests.
- The ephod worn by the high priest was specially embroidered with gold, blue, purple, and red yarn.
- The breastpiece of the high priest was attached to the front of the ephod. Behind the breastpiece were stored the Urim and Thummim, which were stones used for asking God what his will was in certain matters.
- The judge Gideon foolishly made an ephod out of gold and it became something that the Israelites worshiped as an idol.

(See also: [breastplate](#), [breastpiece](#), [Gideon](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Ephraim

### Facts:

Ephraim was the second son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes that were located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- Ephraim was apparently a very mountainous or hilly area, based on references to “the hill country of Ephraim” or “the mountains of Ephraim.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## evil, wicked, wickedness

### Definition:

The terms “evil” and “wicked” both refer to anything that is opposed to God’s holy character and will.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering or being cruel and unkind.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral”
- Other ways to translate these could include, “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [good](#), [goodness](#), [righteous](#), demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit)

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **[03-01]** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **[03-02]** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **[04-02]** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **[08-12]** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **[14-02]** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **[17-01]** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **[18-11]** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.

- [29-08] The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- [45-02] They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- [50-17] He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

**exalt, exaltation****Definition:**

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include, “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts, it could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves”

(See also: [praise](#), [worship](#), [glorify](#), [boast](#), [boastful](#), [proud](#), [pride](#), [prideful](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## face

### Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means, “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, “to face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide: to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine that affected many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression, “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term “to face” could be translated as “to turn toward” or “to look at directly” or “to look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as, “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression, “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression, “hide his face from” could be translated as, “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as, “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression, “say it to their face” could be translated as, “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression, “on the face of the land” could also be translated as, “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

**Bible References:**

Waiting



## faithful, faithfulness

### Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means, “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include, “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: [faith](#), [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [08-05] Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- [14-12] Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- [15-13] The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- [17-09] David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- [18-04] God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon’s death.
- [35-12]”The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’
- [49-17] But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- [50-04] If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

## false god, foreign god, god, goddess

### Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

### Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), [Asherah](#), [Asherah poles](#), [Ashtoreth](#), [Baal](#), [Molech](#), [Moloch](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[10-02]** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt’s **gods**.
- **[13-04]** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**.”
- **[14-02]** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **[18-13]** But most of Judah’s kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

## **ancestor, father, forefather**

### **Definition:**

When used literally, the term “father” refers to a person’s male parent. There are also several figurative uses of this term.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to the ancestors of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated as, “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4, “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader.”
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as, “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: [God the Father](#), [heavenly Father](#), [Father](#), [son](#), [son of](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **favor, favorable, favoritism**

### **Definition:**

The term “favor” refers to doing something to benefit someone who is regarded positively. Something that is “favorable” is positive, approving, or beneficial.

- The term “favoritism” means to act favorably toward some people but not others. Often favoritism is The term “favoritism” means acting favorably toward some people, but not others. shown toward people who are rich or are considered
- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means they approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” means that someone is approved of by someone else.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include, “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as, “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as, “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite” which means “the one who is preferred or loved best.”

“find favor” “increased in favor” “won the favor of”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh**

### **Definition:**

The terms “fear” and “afraid” refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term “fear” can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase “fear of Yahweh,” and related terms “fear of God” and “fear of the Lord,” refer to deeply respecting God and showing that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “to fear” can be translated as “to be afraid” or “to deeply respect” or “to revere” or “to be in awe of.”
- The term “afraid” could be translated as “terrified” or “scared” or “fearful.”
- The sentence, “The fear of God fell on all of them” could be translated as, “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as, “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- Note that the phrase “fear of Yahweh” does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase “fear of the Lord” or “fear of the Lord God” would be used instead.

(See also: [marvel](#), [wonder](#), [amazed](#), [astonished](#), [awe](#), [awesome](#), [Lord](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [Yahweh](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## feast

### Definition:

The term “feast” refers to an event where a group of people eat a very large meal together, often for the purpose of celebrating something. The action “to feast” means to eat a large amount of food or to participate in eating a feast together.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In Bible times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- A feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.
- The term “to feast” could also be translated as “to eat lavishly” or “to celebrate by eating lots of food” or “to eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as, “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: [festival](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **festival**

### **Definition:**

In general, a festival is a celebration held by a community of people.

- The word for “festival” in the Old Testament literally means “appointed time.”
- The festivals celebrated by the Israelites were specially appointed times or seasons that God had commanded them to observe.
- In some English translations, the word “feast” is used instead of festival because the celebrations included having a large meal together.
- There were several main festivals that the Israelites celebrated every year:
  - Passover
  - Festival of Unleavened Bread
  - Firstfruits
  - Festival of Weeks (Pentecost)
  - Festival of Trumpets
  - Day of Atonement
  - Festival of Shelters
- The purpose of these festivals was to thank God and to remember the amazing things he had done to rescue, protect, and provide for his people.

(See also: [feast](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**fig****Definition:**

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow to be as tall as 6 meters high and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

**Bible References:**

Waiting



**fire****Definition:**

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as, “cause you to experience suffering in order to purify you.”

(See also: [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## firstfruits

### Definition:

The term “first fruits” refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the “first fruits” of all believers in him who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the “first fruits” of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The literal use of this term could be translated as “first portion (of crops)” or “first part of the harvest.”
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: [firstborn](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **flock, herd**

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle, oxen, or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- For example, in English the term “herd” can also be used for sheep or goats, but in the Bible text it is not used this way.
- The term “flock” in English is also used for a group of birds, but it can not be used for pigs, oxen, or cattle.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals.
- For verses that refer to “flocks and herds” it may be better to add “of sheep” or “of cattle” for example, if the language does not have different words to refer to different kinds of animal groups.

(See also: [goat](#), [kid](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#), [pig](#), [swine](#), [pork](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), )

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**fool, foolish, folly****Definition:**

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “fool” could be translated as, “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include, “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**foreigner, foreign, alien****Definition:**

The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.”

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from your own.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not only refer to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## forever

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “forever” refers to never-ending time. Sometimes it is used figuratively to mean, “a very long time.”

- The term “forever and ever” emphasizes that something will always exist.
- The phrase “forever and ever” is a way of expressing what eternity or eternal life is. It also has the idea of time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referring to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase, “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase, “forever and ever” could also be translated as, “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as, “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of mine will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#), [reign](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **forgive, forgiveness**

### **Definition:**

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against a person who did something hurtful. “Forgiveness” is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean, “cancel” as in the expression, “forgive a debt.”
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus’ sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “forgive” could be translated as, “pardon” or “cancel” or “release” or “not hold against” (someone).
- The term “forgiveness” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “practice of not resenting” or “declaring (someone) as not guilty” or “the act of pardoning.”

(See: [guilt](#), [guilty](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [07-10] But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- [13-15] Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- [17-13] David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.
- [21-05] In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.
- [29-01] One day Peter asked Jesus, “Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?”
- [29-08] I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- [38-05] Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins.

## sexual immorality

### Definition:

The term “sexual immorality” refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God’s plan. Older English Bible versions call this “fornication.”

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God’s will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person’s spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is “prostitution,” which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel’s unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sexual immorality” could be translated as “immorality” as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include, “wrong sexual acts” or “sex outside of marriage.”
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term “adultery.”
- The translation of this term’s figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterer](#), [false god](#), [god](#), [prostitute](#), [harlot](#), [unfaithful](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



**forsake, forsaken, forsook****Definition:**

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, it means they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, it means he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used as past tense as in “he has forsaken you” or to refer to someone who has “been forsaken.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate this term could include, “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- The project language may find it more clear to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text is talking about forsaking a thing or a person.

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## **fountain, spring**

### **Definition:**

The terms “fountain” and “spring” usually refer to a large amount of water that flows out naturally from the ground.

- These words are also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to blessings flowing from God or to refer to something that cleanses and purifies.
- In modern times, a fountain is often a manmade object that has water flowing out of it, such as a drinking fountain. Make sure that the translation of this term refers to a natural source of flowing water.
- Compare the translation of this term with how the term “flood” is translated.

(See also: [flood](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## fruit, fruitful

### Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions and thoughts. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression, “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces,” that is, children.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural
- , “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression, “fruit of the land” could also be translated as, “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as, “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression, “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a women gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elisabeth says to Mary, “blessed is the fruit of your womb” she means, “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression, “fruit of the vine” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”

- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as, “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression, “fruitful labor” could be translated as, “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in you.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [grain](#), [grape](#)[Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [vine](#), [womb](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## **gate, gate bar**

### **Definition:**

A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place to lock the gate.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made, because city walls were thick enough to have gateways that produced cool shade from the hot sun. Citizens found it pleasant to sit in the shade to conduct their business and even to judge legal cases.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be, “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase, “bars of the gate” could be translated as, “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Gibeah

### Facts:

Gibeah is the name of a city that was located north of Jerusalem and south of Bethel.

- Gibeah was in the territory of the tribe of Benjamin.
- It was the site of a huge battle between the Benjamites and Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Benjamin](#), [Bethel](#), [Jerusalem](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Gilead

### Definition:

Gilead is the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river, where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region is also referred to as the “hill country of Gilead” or “Mount Gilead.”
- “Gilead” was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Gad](#), [Jephthah](#), [Manasseh](#), [Reuben](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Gilgal

### Facts:

The term Gilgal was a town north of Jericho and was the first place that the Israelites camped after crossing the Jordan River to enter Canaan.

- At Gilgal, Joshua set up twelve stones taken from the dry river bed of the Jordan River that they had just crossed over.
- Gilgal was the city that Elijah and Elisha were leaving as they crossed the Jordan when Elijah was taken up to heaven.
- There were also several other places called “Gilgal” in the Old Testament.
- The word “gilgal” means “circle of stones,” perhaps referring to a place where a circular altar was built.
- In the Old Testament, this name almost always occurs as, “the gilgal.” This may indicate that it was not a specific place name but rather was a description of a certain kind of place.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Elijah](#), , [Elisha](#), [Jericho](#), [Jordan River](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## glory, glorious

### Definition:

In general, the term “glory” means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be “glorious.”

- Sometimes “glory” refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression “glory of the shepherds” refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression “to glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include, “splendor” or “brightness” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression, “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as, “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”

(See also: [glorify](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- [25-06] Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- [37-01] When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- [37-08] Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

## God

### Facts:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh” which means, “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include, “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being.”
- Other ways to translate “God” could be, “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use two different terms for “God” and “god.”
- The phrase, “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as, “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#), [false god](#), [god](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [idol](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Yahweh](#).)

### Bible References:

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [01-01]**God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- [01-15]**God** made man and woman in his own image.
- [05-03]"I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- [09-14]**God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- [10-02] Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- [16-01] The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- [22-07] You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- [24-09] There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- [25-07]"Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- [28-01]"There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- [49-09] But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- [50-16] But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

## gold

### Definition:

Gold is a yellow-colored high-quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included ear rings and other jewelry, idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [silver](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## good, goodness

### Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as, “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include, “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [profit](#), [profitable](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), )

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-04] God saw that what he had created was **good**.

- [01-11] God planted...the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- [01-12] Then God said, ”It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- [02-04]”God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- [08-12]”You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good!**”
- [14-15] Joshua was a **good** leader because he tTable of Contentsrusted and obeyed God.
- [18-13] Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- [28-01]”**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, ”Why do you call me ’**good?**’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

## **grain**

### **Definition:**

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- The heads of grain are the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](#), [wheat](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## grape

### Definition:

A grape is a small, round, smooth-skinned berry fruit that grows in clusters on vines. The juice of grapes is used in making wine.

- There are different colors of grapes, such as light green, purple, or red.
- Individual grapes can be around one to three centimeters in size.
- People grow grapes in gardens called vineyards. These normally consist of long rows of vines.
- Grapes were a very important food during Bible times and having vineyards was a sign of wealth.
- In order to keep grapes from rotting, people would often dry them. Dried grapes are called “raisins” and they were used to make raisin cakes.
- Jesus told a parable about a grape vineyard to teach his disciples about God’s kingdom.

(See also: [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## guilt, guilty

### Definition:

The term “guilt” refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To “be guilty” means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of “guilty” is “innocent.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate “guilt” as “the weight of sin” or “the counting of sins.”
- Ways to translate “to be guilty” could include a word or phrase that means, “to be at fault” or “having done something morally wrong” or “having committed a sin.”

ULB exs: take away the guilt of your sin, take away your guilt, guilt offering, punish your guilt, no guilt for murder will attach to him, carry his own guilt, wash away his guilt, be in great guilt, our guilt grows to the heavens

(See also: [innocent](#), [iniquity](#)[punish](#), [punishment](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#).)

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[39-02]** They brought many witnesses who lied about him (Jesus). However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was **guilty** of anything.
- **[39-11]** After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, “I find no **guilt** in this man.” But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!” Pilate replied, “He is not **guilty**.” But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, “He is not **guilty!**”
- **[40-04]** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Don’t you fear God? We are **guilty**, but this man is innocent.
- **[49-10]** Because of your sin, you are **guilty** and deserve to die.

## hades, sheol

### Definition:

The terms “hades” and “sheol” are used in the Bible to refer to death and the place where the souls of people go when they die. Their meanings are similar.

- The Hebrew term “sheol” is often used in the Old Testament to refer generally to the place of death.
- In the New Testament, the Greek term “hades” refers to a place for the souls of people who rebelled against God. These souls are referred to as going “down” to hades. This is sometimes contrasted to going “up” to heaven, where the souls of people who believe in Jesus live.
- The term “hades” is coupled with the term “death” in the book of Revelation. In the end times, both death and hades will be thrown into the Lake of Fire, which is hell.

### Translation Suggestions

- The Old Testament term “sheol” could be translated as “place of the dead” or “place for dead souls.” Some translations translate this as “the pit” or “death,” depending on the context.
- The New Testament term “hades” could also be translated as “place for unbelieving dead souls” or “place of torment for the dead” or “place for the souls of unbelieving dead people.”
- Some translations keep the word “sheol” or “hades,” spelling them to fit the sound patterns of the language of translation. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#)).
- A phrase could also be added to the term to explain it, for example, “sheol, place where dead people are” or “hades, place of death.”

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#), [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [death](#), [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [hell](#), [lake of fire](#), [tomb](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **hand, right hand, to hand over**

### **Definition:**

There are several figurative ways that “hand” is used in the Bible:

- To “hand” something to someone means to put something into that person’s hands.
- The term “hand” is often used in reference to God’s power and action, such as when God says, “Has not my hand made all these things?” (See: **Metonymy**)
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.
- The term “laying on of hands” refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service or to pray for healing.
- Some other figurative uses of “hand” include:
  - To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
  - To “save from the hand of” means to stop someone from harming someone else.
  - To be “close at hand” means to be “nearby.”
  - The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
  - The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, “by the hand of the Lord” means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression, “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- When “hand” refers to the person, such as in “the hand of God did this,” it could be translated as “God did this.”
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as, “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression

with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [captive](#), [captivity](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## harvest

### Definition:

The term “harvest” refers to the gathering in of ripe fruits or vegetables from the plants on which they were growing.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In a figurative sense, the word “harvest” can refer to people coming to believe in Jesus or can describe a person’s spiritual growth.
- The idea of a harvest of spiritual crops fits with the figurative image of fruits being a picture of godly character qualities.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as, “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb “to harvest” could be translated as, “to gather in” or “to pick up” or “to collect.”

(See: [firstfruits](#), [festival](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## heal, cure

### Definition:

The terms “heal” and “cure” both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is “healed” or “cured” has been “made well” or “made healthy.”
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases such as leprosy do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.

(See also: [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [19-14] One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease. He had heard of Elisha so he went and asked Elisha to **heal** him.
- [21-10] He (Isaiah) also predicted that the Messiah would **heal** sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk.
- [26-06] Jesus continued saying, “And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not **heal** any of them. He only **healed** the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel’s enemies.”
- [26-08] They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus **healed** them.
- [32-14] She had heard that Jesus had **healed** many sick people and thought, “I’m sure that if I can just touch Jesus’ clothes, then I will be **healed**, too!”
- [44-03] Immediately, God **healed** the lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to praise God.
- [44-08] Peter answered them, “This man stands before you **healed** by the power of Jesus the Messiah.”
- [49-02] ] Jesus did many miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, **healed** many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

## heart

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression, “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. They have been deeply hurt emotionally.

### Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this nonfiguratively with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as, “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as, “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include, “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: [hard](#), [hardness](#), [harden](#) other)

### Bible References:

Waiting

## heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

### Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the “kingdom of heaven” he is referring to the kingdom of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it could be translated as “God.”
- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See: [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [04-02] They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- [14-11] He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- [29-09] Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- [37-09] Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- [42-11] Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.



## heifer

### Definition:

A heifer is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [cow](#), [calf](#), [bull](#), [cattle](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Hezekiah

### Definition:

Hezekiah was the 13th king over the kingdom of Judah. He was a king who trusted and obeyed God.

- Unlike his father Ahaz who had been an evil king, King Hezekiah was a good king who destroyed all the places of idol worship in Judah.
- One time when Hezekiah got very sick and almost died, he earnestly prayed that God would spare his life. God healed him and allowed him to live 15 more years.
- As a sign to Hezekiah that this would happen, God did a miracle and caused time to move backwards.
- God also answered Hezekiah's prayer to save his people from King Sennacherib of Assyria, who was attacking them.

(See also: [Ahaz](#), [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [Judah](#), [Sennacherib](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **high places**

### **Definition:**

The term “high places” refers to the altars and shrines that were used for worshiping idols. They were usually built on higher ground, such as on a hill or mountainside.

- Many of the kings of Israel sinned against God by building altars to false gods on these high places. This led the people to become deeply involved in worshiping idols.
- When a God-fearing king started ruling in Israel or Judah, often he would remove the high places or altars in order to stop the worship of these idols.
- However, some of these good kings were careless and did not remove the high places, which resulted in the entire nation of Israel continuing to worship idols.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate this term could include, “elevated places for idol worship” or “hilltop idol shrines” or “idol altar mounds.”
- Make sure it is clear that this term refers to the idol altars, not just to the high place where those altars are located.

(See also: [altar](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [worship](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Holy One

### Definition:

The term “Holy One” is a title in the Bible that almost always refers to God.

- In the Old Testament, this title often occurs in the phrase “Holy One of Israel.”
- In the New Testament, Jesus is also referred to as the “Holy One.”
- The term “holy one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to an angel.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The literal term is, “the Holy” (with “One” being implied.) Many languages (like English) will translate this with the implied noun included (such as “One” or “God”).
- This term could also be translated as, “God, who is holy” or “the Set Apart One.”
- The phrase, “the Holy One of Israel” could be translated as, “the Holy God whom Israel worships” or “Holy One who rules Israel.”
- It is best to translate this term using the same word or phrase that is used to translate “holy.”

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [God](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **honor, to honor**

### **Definition:**

The terms “honor” and “to honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God also instructs Christians to honor others, but not to try to get honor for themselves.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents, which includes respect and obedience.
- the terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Honor for God includes thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include, “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term “to honor” could be translated as “to show special respect to” or “to cause to be praised” or “to show high regard for” or “to highly value.”

(See also: [dishonor](#), [dishonorable](#), [glory](#), [glorious](#), [glorify](#), [praise](#) other)

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## hope

### Definition:

The term “hope” refers to expecting and strongly desiring something to happen. It can also mean to not be certain that it will happen.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” also has the meaning of “trust” as in, “my hope is in the Lord.” It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULB translates the term “hope” as “confidence,” especially in the New Testament in contexts that refer to the assurance of receiving what God has promised to people who believe in Jesus as their Savior.
- To have “no hope” means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term “to hope” could also be translated as “to wish” or “to desire” or “to expect.”
- The expression, “nothing to hope for” could be translated as “nothing to trust in” or “no expectation of anything good”
- To “have no hope” could be translated as, “have no expectation of anything good” or “have no security” or “be sure that nothing good will happen.”
- The expression, “have set your hopes on” could also be translated as “have put your confidence in” or “have been trusting in.”
- The phrase “I find hope in your Word” could also be translated as, “I am confident that your Word is true” or “Your Word helps me trust in you” or “When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed.”
- Phrases such as, “hope in” God could also be translated as, “trust in God” or “know for sure that God will do what he has promised” or “be certain that God is faithful.”

(See also: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [confidence](#), [confident](#), [good](#), [goodness](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

~review~DISCUSSION~~

## **horse**

### **Definition:**

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: [chariot](#), , [donkey](#), [mule](#), [Solomon](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## horsemen

### Definition:

In Bible times, the term “horsemen” referred to men who rode horses into battle.

- Warriors who rode in horse-pulled chariots may also have been called “horsemen,” though this term usually refers to men who are actually riding on the horses.
- The Israelites believed that using horses in battle placed too much emphasis on their own strength rather than on Yahweh, so they did not use a lot of horsemen.
- This term could also be translated as, “horse riders” or “men on horses.”

(See also: [chariot](#), [horse](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## Hosea

### Facts:

Hosea was a prophet of Israel who lived and prophesied about 750 years before the time of Christ.

- His ministry lasted for many years through the reigns of several kings, such as Jeroboam, Zechariah, Jotham, Ahaz, Hoshea, Uzziah, and Hezekiah.
- Hosea was told by God to marry a prostitute named Gomer and to continue to love her, even though she was unfaithful to him.
- This was a picture of God's love for his unfaithful people, Israel.
- Hosea prophesied against the people of Israel because of their sin, warning them to turn away from worshipping idols.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaz](#), [Hezekiah](#), [Hoshea](#), [Jeroboam](#), [Jotham](#), [Uzziah](#), [Azariah](#), [Zechariah \(OT\)](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## house

### Definition:

The term “house” is often used figuratively in the Bible.

- Sometimes it means “household,” referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Often “house” refers to a person’s descendants or other relatives. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to where God is or dwells.
- In Hebrews 3, “God’s house” is used as a metaphor to refer to God’s people or more generally, to everything pertaining to God.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as, “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as, “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include, “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh’s temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.”
- “House of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [house of God](#), [Yahweh’s house](#), [household](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **household**

### **Definition:**

The term “household” refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and any servants they have.

- If someone manages a household, this would involve directing the servants as well as taking care of the property.
- Sometimes “household” can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: [house](#) )

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## house of God, Yahweh's house

### Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases “house of God” (God’s house) and “house of Yahweh (Yahweh’s house) refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- Sometimes “God’s house” is used to refer to the people of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as, “a house for worshiping God” or “a place for worshiping God.”
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as, “the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped (or “where God is present” or “where God meets with his people.”)
- The word “house” may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God “dwells” there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: [people of God](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting

## idol, idolatrous

### Definition:

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#), [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-05]** ”Do not make **idols** or worship them, because I, Yahweh, am a jealous God.”
- **[13-12]** Aaron made a golden **idol** in the shape of a calf. The people began to wildly worship the **idol** and make sacrifices to it!
- **[14-03]** ”You must completely destroy all of their **idols**. If you do not obey me, you will worship their **idols** instead of me.”
- **[18-12]** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel worshiped **idols**. This kind of worship often included sexual immorality and sometimes even child sacrifice.
- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshipping **idols** and to start showing justice and mercy to others.

**image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure****Definition:**

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term “image” is a shortened form of “carved image.”

- A “carved image” or “carved figure” is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
- A “cast metal figure” is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
- These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
- The term “image” when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- When referring to an idol, the term “image” could also be translated as “statue” or “engraved idol” or “carved religious object.”
- It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as “carved image” or “cast metal figure,” even in places where only the term “image” or “figure” is in the original text.
- Make sure it is clear that this term is different than the term used to refer to being in the image of God.

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [God](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [image of God](#), [image](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## **incense**

### **Definition:**

The term “incense” refers to a mixture of fragrant spices that are burned to produce smoke that has a pleasant smell.

- God told the Israelites to burn incense as an offering to him.
- The incense had to be made from mixing equal amounts of five specific spices exactly as God directed. This was a sacred incense, so they were not allowed to use it for any other purpose.
- The “altar of incense” was a special altar that was only used for burning incense.
- The incense was offered at least four times a day, at each hour of prayer. It was also offered every time a burnt offering was made.
- The burning of incense represents prayer and worship rising up to God from his people.
- Other ways to translate “incense” could include, “fragrant spices” or “good-smelling plants.”

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [frankincense](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **iniquity**

### **Definition:**

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [transgress](#), [transgression](#), [trespass](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting



## Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

### Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means, “he struggles with God.”

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “people of Israel,” the “nation of Israel,” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel was made up of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as, “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [nation](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-15]** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **[09-03]** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **[09-05]** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **[10-01]** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’”
- **[14-12]** But despite all this, the people of **Israel** complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **[15-09]** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **[15-12]** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders.
- **[16-16]** So God punished **Israel** again for worshiping idols.
- **[43-06]** “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

## I, Yahweh; me, Yahweh

### Definition:

Many times in the Old Testament, when God is speaking about himself, he uses his name instead of a pronoun.

- For example, instead of saying, “Honor me,” he says, “Honor Yahweh.”
- To make it clear that God is the one talking about himself, the ULB often translates this by adding a pronoun such as in, “Honor me, Yahweh” or “I, Yahweh say.”
- By adding the pronoun “I” or “me,” the ULB indicates to the reader that God is the speaker.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some translators may decide it is natural and clear in their language to simply follow the literal text and use “Yahweh” with no pronoun added.
- Some may decide to use a pronoun with Yahweh only a few times at the beginning of a portion of text, but then omit the pronoun in the rest of that section. An ULB example of this is Deuteronomy 5:9-16.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- This is a summary of possible ways to translate “Yahweh” when God is talking:
  - “Yahweh” (literal)
  - “I, Yahweh” (or “me, Yahweh”)
  - “I” (or “me”)
  - Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”
- Another option would be to only add the pronoun occasionally, but not at every occurrence.
- The translation of this phrase should sound natural in the language and should make it clear that Yahweh is talking about himself.

(See also: [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Jacob, Israel

### Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning, "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means, "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him, so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [deceive](#), [deceit](#), [deception](#), [deceptive](#), [Esau](#), [Isaac](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Rebekah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[07-01]** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **[07-07]** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **[07-08]** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **[07-10]** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **[08-01]** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

## Jehu

### Facts:

Jehu was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- Jehu son of Hanani was a prophet during the reigns of King Ahab of Israel and King Jehoshaphat of Judah.
- Jehu son (or descendant) of Jehoshaphat was a general in the Israelite army who was anointed king by order of the prophet Elisha.
- Jehu killed two evil kings: King Joram of Israel and King Ahaziah of Judah.
- King Jehu also killed all the relatives of the former King Ahab, and had the evil queen Jezebel killed.
- Jehu destroyed all the places of Baal worship in Samaria and killed all the prophets of Baal.
- King Jehu served the only true God, Yahweh, and was king over Israel for twenty-eight years.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Ahaziah](#), [Baal](#), [Elisha](#), [Jehoshaphat](#), [Jehu](#), [Jezebel](#), [Joram](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Jeroboam

### Facts:

Jeroboam son of Nebat was the first king of the northern kingdom of Israel around 900-910 BC. Another Jeroboam, son of King Jehoash, ruled over Israel about 120 years later.

- Yahweh gave Jeroboam son of Nebat a prophecy that he would become king after Solomon and that he would rule ten tribes of Israel.
- When Solomon died, the ten northern tribes of Israel rebelled against Solomon's son Rehoboam and instead made Jeroboam their king, leaving Rehoboam as king of only the southern two tribes, Judah and Benjamin.
- Jeroboam became a wicked king who led the people away from worshiping Yahweh and instead set up idols for them to worship. All the other kings of Israel followed Jeroboam's example and were evil like he was.
- Almost 120 years later, another King Jeroboam began ruling the northern kingdom of Israel. This Jeroboam was the son of King Jehoash and was wicked like all the previous kings of Israel had been.
- In spite of this, God had mercy on Israel and helped this King Jeroboam to gain land and establish boundaries for their territory.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Solomon](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[18-08]** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named **Jeroboam** to be their king.
- **[18-09]** **Jeroboam** rebelled against God and caused the people to sin. He built two idols for his people to worship instead of worshiping God at the Temple in the kingdom of Judah.

## Jezreel

### Definition:

Jezreel was the name of an important Israelite city in the territory of the Issachar tribe, located southwest of the Salt Sea.

- The city of Jezreel is one of the western points in the Plain of Megiddo, which is also called the “Valley of Jezreel.”
- Several kings of Israel had their palaces in the city of Jezreel.
- Naboth’s vineyard was located near King Ahab’s palace in Jezreel. The prophet Elijah prophesied against Ahab there.
- Ahab’s evil wife Jezebel was killed in Jezreel.
- Many other significant events happened in this city, including several battles.

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Elijah](#), [Issachar](#), [Jezebel](#), [palace](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Joash

### Facts:

Joash was the name of several men in the Old Testament.

- One Joash was the father of the Israelite deliverer, Gideon.
- Another man named Joash was a descendant of Jacob's youngest son, Benjamin.
- The most well-known Joash became king of Judah at the age of seven. He was the son of Ahaziah, king of Judah, who had been murdered.
- When Joash was a very young child, his aunt saved him from being killed by hiding him away until he was old enough to be crowned king.
- King Joash was a good king who at first obeyed God. But he did not remove the high places and the Israelites started worshiping idols again.
- King Joash ruled Judah during some of the years that King Jehoash was ruling Israel. They were two different kings.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaziah](#), [altar](#), [Benjamin](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [Gideon](#), [high places](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **Jotham**

### **Definition:**

In the Old Testament, there are three men with the name Jotham.

- One man named Jotham was the youngest son of Gideon. Jotham helped defeat his older brother Abimelech, who had killed all the rest of their brothers.
- Another man named Jotham was a king over Judah for sixteen years following the death of his father Uzziah (Azariah).
- Like his father, King Jotham obeyed God and was a good king.
- However, he did not remove the places of idol worship and this caused the people of Judah to later turn away from God again.
- Jotham is also one of the ancestors listed in the genealogy of Jesus Christ in the book of Matthew.

(See also: [Abimelech](#), [Ahaz](#), [Gideon](#), [Uzziah](#), [Azariah](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting



## joy, joyful

### Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term, “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or with a phrase that means, “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” **Metonymy**)

(See also: **rejoice**)

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[33-07]**”The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with **joy**.”
- **[34-04]**”The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field.”
- **[41-07]** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

## Judah

### Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah."

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern part of the nation.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Jew](#), [Jewish](#), [Jews](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Judea](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## judge, judgment

### Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “to judge” could include, “to decide” or “to condemn” or “to punish” or “to decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as, “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: [decree](#), [judge](#), [judgment day](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-16]** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **[21-08]** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.

- **[39-04]** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **[50-14]** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

## **just, justice, justly**

### **Definition:**

These terms refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include, "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as, "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as, "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as, "righteous" or "upright."

(See also: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[17-09]** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **[18-13]** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **[50-17]** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

## kingdom

### Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as, “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be, “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase, “kingdom of light” could be translated as, “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-02]** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **[18-04]** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.

- **[18-07]** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **[18-08]** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **[21-08]** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

## kingdom of Israel

### Facts:

The term “kingdom of Israel” refers to the northern part of the nation of Israel when the twelve tribes of Israel were divided into two kingdoms after Solomon died.

- The kingdom of Israel in the north had ten tribes and the kingdom of Judah in the south had two tribes.
- The capital city of the kingdom of Israel was Samaria. It was about 50 km from Jerusalem, the capital city of Judah.
- All the kings of the kingdom of Israel were evil. They influenced the people to to serve idols and false gods.
- God sent the Assyrians to attack the kingdom of Israel. Many of Isaelites were captured and taken away to live in Assyria.
- The Assyrians brought foreigners to live among the remaining people of the kingdom of Israel. These foreigners intermarried with the Israelites, and their descendants became the Samaritan people.

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Jerusalem](#), [kingdom](#), [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[18-08]** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their kingdom in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom of Israel**.
- **[18-10]** The **kingdoms of Judah and Israel** became enemies and often fought against each other.
- **[18-11]** In the new **kingdom of Israel**, all the kings were evil.
- **[20-01]** The **kingdoms of Israel** and Judah both sinned against God.
- **[20-02]** The **kingdom of Israel** was destroyed by the Assyrian Empire, a powerful, cruel nation. The Assyrians killed many people in the **kingdom of Israel**, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **[20-04]** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the **kingdom of Israel** had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called Samaritans.



## Judah, kingdom of Judah

### Facts:

The tribe of Judah was the largest of the twelve tribes of Israel. The kingdom of Judah was made up of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin.

- After King Solomon died, the nation of Israel was divided into two kingdoms: Israel and Judah. The kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom, located west of the Salt Sea.
- The capital city of the kingdom of Judah was Jerusalem.
- Eight kings of Judah obeyed Yahweh and led the people to worship him. The other kings of Judah were evil and led the people to worship idols.
- Over 120 years after Assyria defeated Israel (the northern kingdom), Judah was conquered by the nation of Babylon. The Babylonians destroyed the city and the temple, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Judah, kingdom](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[18-07]** Only two tribes remained faithful to him (Rehoboam). These two tribes became the **kingdom of Judah**.
- **[18-10]** The **kingdoms of Judah** and Israel became enemies and often fought against each other.
- **[18-13]** The **kings of Judah** were descendants of David. Some of these kings were good men who ruled justly and worshiped God. But most of **Judah's** kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols.
- **[20-01]** The **kingdoms of Israel and Judah** both sinned against God.
- **[20-05]** The people in the **kingdom of Judah** saw how God had punished the people of the kingdom of Israel for not believing and obeying him. But they still worshiped idols, including the gods of the Canaanites.
- **[20-06]** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the Babylonians, to attack the **kingdom of Judah**.

- **[20-09]** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of **the kingdom of Judah** to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

## king

### Definition:

The term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

- A king is usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
- When a king dies, it is usually his oldest son who becomes the next king.
- In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
- Rarely the term “king” may be used to refer to someone who is not a true king, such as “King Herod” in the New Testament.
- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
- The “kingdom of God” refers to God’s rule over his people.
- Jesus was called “king of the Jews,” “king of Israel,” and “king of kings.”
- When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
- This term could also be translated as, “supreme chief” or “absolute leader” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” could be translated as, “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: [authority](#), [Herod Antipas](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-06]** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **[16-01]** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **[16-18]** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **[17-05]** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **[21-06]** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **[48-14]** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

## **kiss**

### **Definition:**

A kiss is an action in which one person puts his lips to another person's lips or face. This term can also be used figuratively.

- Some cultures kiss each other on the cheek as a form of greeting or to say goodbye.
- A kiss can communicate deep love between two people, such as a husband and wife.
- The expression "to kiss someone farewell" means to say goodbye with a kiss.
- Sometimes the word "kiss" is used to mean "say goodbye to." When Elisha said to Elijah, "Let me first go and kiss my father and mother," he wanted to say goodbye to his parents before leaving them to follow Elijah.

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## know, knowledge, make known

### Definition:

To “know” means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression “make known” is an expression that means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include, “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know” depending on whether it refers to knowing facts or to knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as, “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as, “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **lamb, Lamb of God**

### **Definition:**

The term “lamb” refers to the young of a sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “the young of a sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [05-07] As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, “Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?”
- [11-02] God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it.
- [24-06] The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, “Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world.”
- [45-08] He read, “They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word.

- **[48-08]** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place.
- **[48-09]** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

## last day, last days, latter days

### Definition:

The term “last days” or “latter days” refers generally to the time period at the end of the current age.

- This time period will be an unknown length of time.
- The “last days” are a time of judgment upon those who have turned away from God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term, “last days” can also be translated as “final days” or “end times.”
- In some contexts, this could be translated as, “end of the world” or “when this world ends.”

(See also: [day of the Lord](#), [day of Yahweh](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [turn](#), [turn away](#), [turn back](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## law, principle

### Definition:

A “law” is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A “principle” is a guideline for decision-making and behavior.

- Both “law” and “principle” can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person’s behavior.
- This meaning of “law” is different from its meaning in the term, “law of Moses” where it refers to commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
- When a general law is being referred to, “law” could be translated as “principle” or “general rule.”

(See also: [law, principle](#) , [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

### Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms “law” and “God’s law” are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites.
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament.
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
  - all of God’s instructions and will.
- The phrase “the law and the prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”).

### Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws” since they refer to many instructions.
- The “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as, “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include: “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions”
- The phrase, “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as, “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: [instruct](#), [instruction](#), [Moses](#), [Ten Commandments](#), [lawful](#), [lawfully](#), [unlawful](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-07]** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.

- **[13-09]** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- **[15-13]** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- **[16-01]** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.
- **[21-05]** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- **[27-01]** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"
- **[28-01]** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."

## Lebanon

### Facts:

Lebanon is a beautiful mountainous region located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, north of Israel. In Bible times this region was also thickly wooded with fir trees, such as cedar and cypress.

- King Solomon sent workers to Lebanon to harvest cedar trees for use in building God's temple.
- Ancient Lebanon was inhabited by Phoenician people who were skilled builders of ships that were used for a successful trading industry.
- The cities of Tyre and Sidon were located in Lebanon. It was in these cities that a valuable purple dye was first used.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [cedar](#), [cypress](#), [fir](#), [Phoenicia](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **leopard**

### **Facts:**

A leopard is a large, cat-like, wild animal that is brown with black spots.

- A leopard is a kind of animal which catches other animals and eats them.
- In the Bible, the suddenness of disaster is compared to a leopard, which pounces suddenly on its prey.
- The prophet Daniel and the apostle John tell about visions in which they saw a beast that looked like a leopard.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [beast](#), [Daniel](#), [prey](#), [to prey on](#), [vision](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## life, live, living, alive

### Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by “physical life” and “spiritual life.”

### 1. Physical life

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam’s body, and he became a living being.
- A “life” can also refer to an individual person, as in, “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living, as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive as in, “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

### 2. Spiritual life

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus and God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called “eternal life” to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as, “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives’ could be translated as, “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as, “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about being alive spiritually, “life” could be translated as “spiritual life” or “eternal life,” depending on the context.
- The concept of “spiritual life” could also be translated as, “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as, “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [01-10] So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- [03-01] After a long time, many people were **living** in the world.
- [08-13] When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- [17-09] However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- [27-01] One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- [37-05] Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- [44-05] "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

**lion****Definition:**

A lion is a large, cat-like, wild animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown in color.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can also be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions who tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion with his bare hands.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [David](#), [leopard](#), [Samson](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting



## Lord

### Facts:

The term “Lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over people. When it is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note however that when used as a form of addressing someone or at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as, “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as, “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has, “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has, “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULB and UDB, the title, “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages translate this term as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme ruler.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## love

### Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” which some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others, even when it doesn’t benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

- Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
- When people love others with this kind of love, it involves actions that show that someone is thinking of what will cause the other person to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
- In the ULB, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love or love for a friend or family member.

- This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
- It can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.

3. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

4. In the figurative expression, “Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated,” the term “loved” refers to God’s choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as “chosen.” Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn’t given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term “hated” is used figuratively here to mean “rejected” or “not chosen.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God’s love can include giving up one’s own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”

- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [save](#), [safe](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [27-02] The law expert replied that God’s law says, “**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself.”
- [33-08] “The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God.”
- [36-05] As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- [39-10] “Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- [47-01] She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- [48-01] When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- [49-03] He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- [49-04] He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- [49-07] Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- [49-09] But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- [49-13] God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

## lover

### Definition:

The term “lover” literally means “person who loves.” Usually this refers to people who are in a sexual relationship with each other.

- When the term “lover” is used in the Bible, it usually refers to a person who is involved in a sexual relationship with someone he is not married to.
- This wrong sexual relationship is often used in the Bible to refer to Israel’s disobedience to God in worshiping idols. So the term “lovers” is also used in a figurative way to refer to the idols that the people of Israel worshiped. In these contexts, this term could possibly be translated by, “immoral partners” or “partners in adultery” or “idols.” [See Metaphor]
- A “lover” of money is someone who puts too much importance on getting money and being rich.
- In the Old Testament book, Song of Songs, the term “lover” is used in a positive way.

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [love](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **Maker**

### **Facts:**

In general, a “maker” is someone who creates or makes things.

- In the Bible, the term “Maker” is sometimes used as a name or title for Yahweh, because he created everything.
- Usually this term is combined with “his” or “my” or “your.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “Maker” can be translated as “the Creator” or “God who creates” or “the One who made everything.”
- The phrase “his Maker” could also be translated as “the One who created him” or “God, who created him.”
- The phrases “your Maker” and “my Maker” could be translated in a similar way.

(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#), [Yahweh](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Memphis

### Definition:

Memphis was an ancient capital city in Egypt, along the Nile River.

- Memphis was located in Lower Egypt, just south of the Nile River delta, where the soil was very fertile and crops were plentiful.
- Its fertile soil and important location between Upper and Lower Egypt caused Memphis to become a major city of trade and commerce.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Nile River](#), [River of Egypt](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## mercy, merciful

### Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as, “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as, “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as, “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See: [compassion](#), [compassionate](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **[19-17]** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **[20-12]** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **[27-11]** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **[32-11]** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”

- **[34-09]**”But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”



## **messenger**

### **Facts:**

The term, “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Mizpah

### Facts:

Mizpah is the name of several towns mentioned in the Old Testament. It means, “look-out point” or “watchtower.”

- When David was being pursued by Saul, he left his parents in Mizpah, under the protection of the king of Moab.
- One city called Mizpah was located on the border between the kingdoms of Judah and Israel. It was a major military center.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Moab](#), [Moabite](#), [Moabites](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **mock, ridicule, scoff at**

### **Definition:**

The terms “mock,” “ridicule,” and “scoff at” all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people’s words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term “scoff at” can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [21-12] Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, **mock**, and beat the Messiah.
- [39-05] The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, “He deserves to die!” Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and **mocked** him.
- [39-12] The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!”
- [40-04] Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God?”
- [40-05] The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd **mocked** Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”

## Most High

### Facts:

The term, “Most High” is a title for God. It refers to his greatness or authority.

- The meaning of this term is similar to the meaning of “Sovereign” or “Supreme.”
- The word “high” in this title does not refer to physical height or distance. It refers to greatness.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can also be translated as, “Most High God” or “Most Supreme being” or “God Most High” or “Greatest One” or “Supreme One” or “God, who is Greater than all.”
- If a word like “high” is used, make sure it does not refer to being physically high or tall.

(See also: [God](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **mourn, mourning**

### **Facts:**

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively, to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: [sackcloth](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **multiply**

### **Definition:**

The term “multiply” means to greatly increase in number. It can also mean to cause something to increase in amount, such as causing pain to multiply.

- God told animals and human beings to “multiply” and fill the earth. This was a command to reproduce many more of their own kind.
- Jesus made the bread and fish multiply in order to feed the 5000 people. The amount of food kept increasing so that there was more than enough food to feed everyone.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated as “increase” or “cause to increase” or “greatly increase in number” or “become greater in number” or “become more numerous.”
- The phrase “greatly multiply your pain” could also be translated as, “cause your pain to become more severe” or “cause you to experience much more pain.”
- To “multiply horses” means to “greedily keep acquiring more horses” or to “get large numbers of horses.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## name

### Definition:

In the Bible, the word “name” is used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, “name” can refer to a person’s reputation, as in, “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” can also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” means speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone can refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like, “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as, “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression, “make a name for ourselves” could be translated, “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression, “call his name” could be translated as, “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression, “those who love your name” could be translated as, “those who love you.”
- The expression, “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## nation

### Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- The term “nation” usually includes the idea of a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” can be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” is used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” is also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as, “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [Grecian](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [Philistines](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## **new moon**

### **Definition:**

The term “new moon” in the Bible refers to the moon when it looks like a small, crescent-shaped sliver of light. This is the beginning phase of the moon as it moves in its orbit around the planet Earth.

- In ancient times, the new moon was used to mark the beginnings of certain time periods, such as months.
- The Israelites celebrated a new moon festival that was marked by the blowing of a ram’s horn.
- The Bible also refers to this period of time as the “beginning of the month.”

(See also: [biblical time: month](#), [earth](#), [earthly](#), [festival](#), [horn](#), [horns](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **oak**

### **Definition:**

An oak is a tall, shade tree with a large trunk and wide spreading branches.

- Oak trees have strong, hard wood that was used to build ships and to make farming plows, oxen yokes and walking sticks for elderly people.
- The seed of an oak tree is called an acorn.
- The trunk of certain oak trees could be as wide around as 6 meters.
- Oak trees were symbolic of long life and had other spiritual meanings. In the Bible, they were often associated with holy places.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Many translations will have to say “oak tree” rather than just “oak.”
- If oak trees are not known in the receptor area, this could be translated as “an oak, which is a large shade tree like...,” then give the name of a local tree that has similar characteristics.
- See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#)

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **oath, swear, swear by**

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, an oath is a formal promise to do something. The person making the oath is required to fulfill that promise. An oath involves a commitment to being faithful and truthful.

- Often in a court of law, a witness gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In the Bible, the term “swear” means to speak an oath.
- The term “swear by” means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Sometimes these terms are used together as in, “swear an oath.”
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham’s relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
- A modern-day use of the word “swear” means to use foul language. This is not its meaning in the Bible.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “an oath” could also be translated as “a pledge” or “a solemn promise.”
- “To swear” could be translated by “to formally promise” or “to pledge” or “to commit to do something.”
- Other ways to translate “swear by my name” could include, “make a promise using my name to confirm it.”
- To “swear by heaven and earth” could be translated as, “promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it.”
- Make sure the translation of “swear” or “oath” does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: [Abimelech](#), [covenant](#), [vow](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## obey, obedient, obedience

### Definition:

The term “obey” means to do what is required or commanded. The term “obedient” describes the character of someone who obeys. Sometimes the command is about not doing something, as in, “do not steal.”

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
- For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate this term could include a word or phrase that means, “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as, “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: [citizen](#), [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [kingdom](#), [law](#), [principle](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-04]** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **[05-06]** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **[05-10]** “Because you (Abraham) have **obeyed** me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **[11-06]** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **[13-07]** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

**oil****Definition:**

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that is taken from certain plants or fruits. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## olive

### Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit is green in color, changing to black as they ripen. Olives are used for eating and extracting oil.
- Olive oil was used for cooking, for lighting lamps, and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: [lamp](#), [the sea](#), [the Great Sea](#), [the western sea](#), [Mediterranean Sea](#), [Mount of Olives](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **oppress, oppression, oppressor**

### **Definition:**

The terms “oppress” and “oppression” refer to treating people harshly. An “oppressor” is a person who oppresses people.

- The term “oppression” especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term “oppressed” describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “oppress” could be translated by, “severely mistreat” or “cause to be heavily burdened” or “put under miserable bondage” or “rule harshly.”
- Ways to translate “oppression” could include, “heavy suppression and bondage” or “burdensome control.”
- The phrase “the oppressed” could be translated as “oppressed people” or “people in terrible bondage” or “those who are treated harshly.”
- The term “oppressor” could be translated as “person who oppresses” or “nation who controls and rules harshly” or “persecutor.”

(See also: [bind](#), [bond](#), [bound](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [persecute](#), [persecution](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## palace

### Definition:

The term “palace” refers to the building or house where a king lived, along with his family members and servants.

- The high priest also lived in a palace complex, as mentioned in the New Testament.
- Palaces were very ornate, with beautiful architecture and furnishings.
- The buildings and furnishings of a palace were constructed of stone or wood, and often were overlaid with expensive wood, gold, or ivory.
- Many other people also lived and worked in the palace complex, which usually included several buildings and courtyards.

(See also: [courtyard](#), [court](#), [high priest](#), [king](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## **parable**

### **Definition:**

The term “parable” usually refers to a short story or object lesson that is used to explain or teach a moral truth.

- Jesus used parables to teach his disciples. Although he also told parables to the crowds of people, he did not always explain the parable.
- A parable could be used to reveal truth to his disciples while hiding that truth from people like the Pharisees who did not believe in Jesus.
- The prophet Nathan told David a parable to show the king his terrible sin.
- The story of the Good Samaritan is an example of a parable that is a story. Jesus’ comparison of old and new wineskins is an example of a parable that was an object lesson to help the disciples understand Jesus’ teachings.

(See also: [Parables](#), [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## people group, peoples, the people, a people

### Definition:

The term “peoples” or “people groups” refers to groups of people who share a common language and culture. The phrase “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- When God set apart “a people” for himself, it means that he chose certain people to belong to him and serve him.
- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, a phrase such as “your people” can mean “your people group” or “your family” or “your relatives.”
- The term “peoples” is often used to refer to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations the term “nations” is also used in this way.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase, “the people of” could be translated as, “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as, “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as, “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [nation](#), [tribe](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[14-02]** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **[21-02]** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **[42-08]** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **[42-10]** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **[48-11]** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **[50-03]** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

## people of God, my people

### Definition:

The term, “people of God” refers to people whom God has called out from the world to have a special relationship with him.

- When God says, “my people” he is talking about the people whom he has chosen and who have a relationship with him.
- God’s people are chosen by him and are set apart from the world to live in a way that is pleasing to him. He also calls them his children.
- In the Old Testament, “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel which was chosen by God and set apart from among the other nations of the world to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, “people of God” especially refers to all those who believe in Jesus and are called the Church. This includes both Jews and Gentiles.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- Other ways to translate “my people” when God says it, could include, “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **pillar, column**

### **Definition:**

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- AS a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: [foundation](#), [founded](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## plague

### Definition:

Plagues are events which cause suffering or death to a large number of people. Often a plague is a disease that spreads quickly and causes many people to die before it can be stopped.

- Many plagues have natural causes, but some were sent by God to punish people for sin.
- In the time of Moses, God sent ten plagues against Egypt to force Pharaoh to let Israel leave Egypt. These plagues included water turning into blood, physical diseases, destruction of crops by insects and hail, three days of complete darkness, and death of the firstborn sons.
- This could also be translated as, “widespread disasters” or “widespread disease,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [hail](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Moses](#), [Pharaoh](#), [king of Egypt](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## power, powers

### Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include, “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”
- An expression like “save us from the power of our enemies” could be translated as, “save us from being oppressed by our enemies” or “rescue us from being controlled by our enemies.” In this case, “power” has the meaning of using one’s strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), )

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[22-05]** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- **[26-01]** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **[32-15]** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **[42-11]** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- **[43-06]** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- **[44-08]** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah.”

## precious

### Facts:

The term “precious” describes people or things that are considered to be very valuable.

- The term “precious stones” or “precious jewels” refers to rocks and minerals that are colorful or have other qualities that make them beautiful or useful.
- Examples of precious stones include diamonds, rubies, and emeralds.
- Gold and silver are called “precious metals.”
- Yahweh says that his people are “precious” in his sight (Isaiah 43:4).
- Peter wrote that a gentle and quiet spirit is precious in God’s sight (1 Peter 3:4).
- This term could also be translated as, “valuable” or “very dear” or “cherished” or “highly valued.”

(See also: [gold](#), [silver](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## priest, priesthood

### Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him".
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like, "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#), [chief priests](#), [high priest](#), [mediator](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [04-07] "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"
- [13-09] Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- [19-07] So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- [21-07] An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

## prince, princess

### Definition:

A “prince” is the son of a king. A “princess” is a daughter of a king.

- The term “prince” is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham’s wealth and importance, he was referred to as a “prince” by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term “prince” is used in the expressions “prince of Persia” and “prince of Greece,” which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a “prince” in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as “the prince of this world.”
- Jesus is called the “Prince of Peace” and the “Prince of Life.”
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as “Lord and Christ” and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as “Prince and Savior,” showing the parallel meaning of “Lord” and “Prince.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “prince” could include, “king’s son” or “ruler” or “leader” or “chieftain” or “captain.”
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, “spirit ruler” or “leading angel.”
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, “evil spirit ruler” or “powerful spirit leader” or “ruling spirit,” depending on the context.

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [authority](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#), [Savior](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## promise

### Definition:

A promise is a pledge to do a certain thing. When someone promises something, it means he is committing to do something.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.
- A promise is often accompanied by an oath to confirm that it will be done.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as, “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as, “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [swear](#), [swear by](#), [vow](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-15]** God said, “I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”?
- **[03-16]** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **[04-08]** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- **[05-04]** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **[08-15]** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **[17-14]** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **[50-01]** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

## prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

### Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example, the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: [Baal](#), [divination](#), [diviner](#), [soothsaying](#), [soothsayer](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [false prophet](#), [fulfill](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [vision](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [12-12] When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- [17-13] God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- [19-01] Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- [19-06] All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- [19-17] Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- [21-09] The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- [43-05] "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- [43-07] "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- [48-12] Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.
-

## **prostitute, harlot, whore**

### **Definition:**

The terms “prostitute” and “harlot” both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word “prostitute” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression “play the harlot” means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To “prostitute oneself” to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [sexual immorality](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## proud, pride, prideful

### Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression, “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as, “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as, “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as, “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as, “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression, “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as, “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: [arrogant](#), [humble](#), [humility](#), [joy](#), [joyful](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-02]** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **[34-10]** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”



## **punish, punishment**

### **Definition:**

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

their

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[13-07]** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **[16-02]** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **[19-16]** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.
- **[48-06]** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **[48-10]** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s **punishment** passes over him.
- **[49-09]** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.

- [49-11] Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

## Ramah

### Facts:

Ramah was an ancient Israelite city located about 8 km from Jerusalem. It was in the region where the tribe of Benjamin lived.

- Ramah was where Rachel died after giving birth to Benjamin.
- When the Israelites were taken captive to Babylon, they were first brought to Ramah before moving to Babylon.
- Ramah was the home of Samuel's mother and father.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Benjamin](#), [Rachel](#), [Samuel](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**reap, reaper****Definition:**

The term “reap” means to harvest crops such as grain. A “reaper” is someone who harvests the crop.

- Usually reapers harvested the crops by hand, pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.
- The idea of reaping a harvest is often used figuratively to refer to telling people the good news about Jesus and bringing them into God’s family.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to the consequences that come from a person’s actions, as in the saying “a man reaps what he plants.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Other ways to translate “to reap” and “reaper” could include “to harvest” and “harvester” (or “person who harvests”). (See link to “harvest” page for more translation suggestions.)

(See also: [good news](#), [gospel](#), [harvest](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## **rebel, rebellious, rebellion**

### **Definition:**

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term “to rebel” could also be translated as “to disobey” or “to revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

:(See also: [authority](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [14-14] After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.
- [18-07] Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- [18-09] Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- [18-13] Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.
- [20-07] But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- [45-03] Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.

## reject

### Definition:

To “reject” someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing.

- The term “reject” can also mean to “refuse to believe in” something.
- To reject God also means to refuse to obey him.
- When the Israelites rejected Moses’ leadership, it means that they were rebelling against his authority. They did not want to obey him.
- The Israelites showed that they were rejecting God when they worshiped false gods.
- The term “push away” is the literal meaning of this word. Other languages may have a similar expression that means to reject or refuse to believe someone or something.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “reject” could also be translated by, “not accept” or “stop helping” or “refuse to obey” or “stop obeying.”
- In the expression, “stone that the builders rejected,” the term “rejected” could be translated as, “refused to use” or “did not accept” or “threw away” or “got rid of as worthless.”
- In the context of the people rejecting God’s commandments, this could be translated as “refused to obey” his commands or “stubbornly chose to not accept” God’s laws.

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [stiff-necked](#), [stubborn](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## rejoice

### Definition:

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as, “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said, “my soul rejoices in God my Savior” she meant, “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

(See also: [joy](#), [joyful](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## repent, repentance

### Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term, “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means, “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term, “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as, “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “to turn away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [turn](#), [turn away](#), [turn back](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [16-02] After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- [17-13] David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- [19-18] They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- [24-02] Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- [42-08] “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins. ”
- [44-05] “So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”



## **restore, restoration**

### **Definition:**

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original and better condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored, has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people are restored to their home country it means they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include: “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- An expression for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it means it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration,” could be translated as, “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## righteous, righteousness

### Definition:

The terms “righteous” and “righteousness” refer to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people who the Bible calls “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous based on Jesus’ righteousness.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as, “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When referring to people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase, “the righteous” could also be translated as, “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good
- Sometimes “the righteous” is used figuratively and refers to “people who think they are good” or “people who seem to be righteous.”

(See also: [good](#), [goodness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-02]** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **[04-08]** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God’s promise.
- **[17-02]** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **[23-01]** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **[50-10]** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.”

## ruler, rulers, rule

### Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group.

- In the Old Testament, a king was also referred to with the general term “ruler,” as in the phrase, “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God is referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action “to rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when referring a king ruling.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#), [king](#), [synagogue](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Sabbath

### Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See: [rest](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-05]** “Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”
- **[26-02]** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **[41-03]** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

## sacrifice, offering

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.
- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin. Animal sacrifices could never do that.
- The figurative expression “offer yourselves as a living sacrifice” means, “live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him.”

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action, “to sacrifice” could be translated as, “to give up something valuable” or “to kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be, “As you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal that is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [drink offering](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [fellowship offering](#), [freewill offering](#) [peace offering](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sin offering](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-14]** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.

- [05-06] "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- [05-09] God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- [13-09] Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- [17-06] David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- [48-06] Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- [48-08] But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- [49-11] Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

## salvation

### Definition:

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated using the word “save” or “rescue” as in, “when God saves people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God will rescue his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as, “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as, “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: [save](#), [safe](#), [Savior](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Samaria, Samaritan

### Facts:

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The region was located between the Plain of Sharon on the west and the Jordan River on the east.

- In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
- When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region and moved them far away to different cities in Assyria.
- The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
- Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
- The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
- In New Testament times, the region of Samaria was bordered by the region of Galilee on the north and the region of Judea on the south.

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Galilee](#), [Galilean](#), [Judea](#), [Sharon](#), [Plain of Sharon](#), [kingdom of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[20-04]** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called **Samaritans**.
- **[27-08]** "The next person to walk down that road was a **Samaritan**. (**Samaritans** were the descendants of Jews who had married people from other nations. **Samaritans** and Jews hated each other.)"
- **[27-09]** "The **Samaritan** then lifted the man onto his own donkey and took him to a roadside inn where he took care of him."
- **[45-07]** He (Philip) went to **Samaria** where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.



## save, safe

### Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” it means that through Jesus’ death on the cross, God has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include, “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression, “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”

(See also: [cross](#), [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [punish](#), [punishment](#), [salvation](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-08]** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **[11-02]** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **[12-05]** Moses told the Israelites, “Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you.”
- **[12-13]** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **[16-17]** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **[44-08]** “You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!”
- **[47-11]** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, “What must I do to be **saved**?” Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**.”

- [49-12] Good works cannot **save** you.
- [49-13] God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

## Savior

### Facts:

The term “Savior” refers to a person who saves or rescues others from danger. It can also refer to someone who gives strength to others or provides for them.

- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as Israel’s Savior because he often rescued them from their enemies, gave them strength, and provided them with what they needed to live.
- In the New Testament, “Savior” is used as a description or title for Jesus Christ because he saves people from being eternally punished for their sin. He also saves them from being controlled by their sin.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, “Savior” should be translated with a word that is related to the words “save” and “salvation.”
- Ways to translate this term could include, “the One who saves” or “God, who saves” or “who delivers from danger” or “who rescues from enemies” or “Jesus, the one who rescues (people) from sin.”

(See also: [deliver](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [salvation](#), [save](#), [safe](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## seek, sought

### Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. The past tense is “sought.” It can also mean “try hard” or “make an effort” to do something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity means to “try to find a time” to do a particular thing
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- to “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “try to get favor” or “to do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## shame, shameful, ashamed

### Definition:

The term “shame” refers to a painful feeling of being disgraced a person has because of something dishonorable or improper that he or someone else has done.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something shameful.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their sin so that they feel ashamed of themselves.
- The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- God can bring shame to a person who does not repent, by exposing that person’s sin and causing him to be humiliated.

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [humble](#), [humility](#), [humiliate](#), [humiliation](#), [Isaiah](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Shechem

### Facts:

Shechem is a town in Canaan located about 40 miles north of Jerusalem. Shechem is also the name of a man in the Old Testament.

- The town of Shechem is where Jacob settled after being reconciled to his brother Esau.
- Jacob bought land from the sons of Hamor the Hivite in Shechem, which later became his family burial ground and where Jacob's sons buried him.
- Hamor's son Shechem raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, which resulted in Jacob's sons killing all the men in the town of Shechem.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))[Hamor](#)

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Esau](#), [Hamor](#), [Hivite](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## sheep, ram, ewe

### Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. The male sheep is called a “ram.” The female sheep is called a “ewe.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially males and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [lamb](#), [Lamb of God](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-12]** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **[17-02]** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **[30-03]** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **[38-08]** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

## silver

### Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The containers would include silver cups and bowls, among other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, silver coins and silver weights called shekels were used.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## **sin, sinful, sinner, sinning**

### **Definition:**

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a sinful nature that controls them.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- “To sin” could also be translated as “to disobey God” or “to do wrong.”
- Depending on the context, “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include, “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- In expressions like “slaves to sin” or “ruled by sin,” the term “sin” could be translated as “disobedience” or “evil desires and actions.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [flesh](#), [tax collector](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- \* **[03-15]** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- \* **[13-12]** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- \* **[20-01]** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- \* **[21-13]** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- \* **[35-01]** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- \* **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- \* **[43-11]** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- \* **[48-08]** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- \* **[49-17]** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

## sister

### Definition:

A sister is a female person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the New Testament, “sister” is also used figuratively to refer to a woman who is a fellow believer in Jesus Christ.
- Sometimes the phrase, “brothers and sisters” is used to refer to all believers in Christ, both men and women.
- In the Old Testament book, Song of Songs, “sister” refers to a lover or a spouse.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological sister, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- Other ways to translate this could include, “sister in Christ” or “spiritual sister” or “woman who believes in Jesus” or “fellow woman believer.”
- If possible, it is best to use a family term.
- If the language has a feminine form for “believer,” this may be a possible way to translate this term.
- When referring to a lover or wife, this could be translated using a feminine form of “loved one” or “dear one.”

(See also: [brother in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, spirit, spiritual](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting

## slaughter

### Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it.

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter where 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies. because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression, “the slaughter was very great” could also be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include, “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [cow](#), [calf](#), [bull](#), [cattle](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [Ezekiel](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#), [slay](#), [slain](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## snare, trap

### Definition:

The terms “snare” and “trap” refer to devices that are used to catch animals and keep them from escaping. In the Bible, these terms are also used figuratively to talk about how sin and temptation are like hidden traps that catch people and harm them.

- A “snare” has a loop of rope or wire that suddenly pulls tight when an animal steps into it, ensnaring its leg.
- A “trap” usually made of metal or wood and has two parts that suddenly and powerfully close together in order to catch an animal so it can’t get away. Sometimes a trap can be a deep hole that has been made in order to get something to fall into it.
- Usually the snare or trap is hidden so that its prey is taken by surprise.
- The phrase “set a trap” means to get a trap ready to capture something.
- To “fall into a trap” refers to falling into a deep hole or pit that was dug and hidden in order to catch an animal.
- When used figuratively, being caught in a trap or snare is compared to how a person can suddenly become ensnared in a sin in the same way that an animal gets captured by a physical snare or trap.
- Just as an animal is endangered and hurt by being in a trap, so a person caught in the trap of sin is being harmed by that sin and needs to be set free.

(See also: [free](#), [freedom](#), [liberty](#), , [prey](#), [to prey on](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#), [tempt](#), [temptation](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## son, son of

### Definition:

The term “son” refers to a boy or man in relation to his parents. It can refer either to someone’s male offspring or to an adopted son.

- “Son” is often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
- The term “son” can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger.
- Sometimes “sons of God” is used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
- God calls Israel his “firstborn son.” This refers to God’s choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God’s message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
- The phrase “son of” often has the figurative meaning, “having the characteristics of.” Examples of this include, “sons of the light,” “sons of disobedience,” “a son of peace,” and “sons of thunder.”
- The phrase “son of” is also used to tell who a person’s father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah, son of Zadok” and “Azariah, son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah, son of Amaziah in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” using the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term “descendant” could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the “descendant of David” or in genealogies where sometimes “son” refers to a male descendant, not an actual son.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.
- The figurative expression “son of” could also be translated as “someone who has the characteristics of” or “someone who is like” or “someone who has” or “someone who acts like.”

(See also: [Azariah](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [firstborn](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [sons of God](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[04-08]** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **[04-09]** God said, "I will give you a **son** from your own body."
- **[05-05]** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's **son**.
- **[05-08]** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, "Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me."
- **[09-07]** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **[11-06]** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **[18-01]** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **[26-04]** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

## **sow, sower, plant**

### **Definition:**

To “sow” means to put seeds in the ground in order to grow plants. A “sower” is a person who sows or plants seeds.

- The method of sowing or planting varies, but one method is to take handfuls of seeds and scatter them on the ground.
- Another method for planting seeds is to make holes in the soil and place seeds in each hole.
- The term “sow” can be used figuratively as in, “a person will reap what he sows.” This means that if a person does something evil, he will receive a negative result. And if a person does good to others, he will receive a positive result.

### **Translations Suggestions**

- The term “sow” could also be translated as “plant.” Make sure the word used to translate this can include planting seeds.
- Other ways to translate “sower” could include, “planter” or “farmer” or “person who plants seeds.”
- In English, “sow” is only used for planting seeds, but the English word “plant” can be used for planting seeds as well as larger things, such as trees. Other languages may also use different words depending on what is being planted.
- The expression, “a person reaps what he sows” could also be translated as, “just like a certain kind of seed produces a certain kind of plant, in the same way a person’s good actions will bring a good result and a person’s evil actions will bring an evil result.”

(See also: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [good](#), [goodness](#), [reap](#), [reaper](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting



## **splendor**

### **Definition:**

The term “splendor” refers to extreme beauty and elegance that is often associated with wealth and a magnificent appearance.

- Often splendor is used to describe the wealth that a king has, or how he looks in his expensive, beautiful finery.
- The word “splendor” can also be used to describe the beauty of trees, mountains, and other things that God has created.
- Certain cities are said to have splendor, referring to their natural resources, elaborate buildings and roads, and the wealth of the people, including rich clothing, gold and silver.
- Depending on the context, this word could be translated as, “magnificent beauty” or “amazing majesty” or “kingly greatness.”

(See also: [glory](#), [glorious](#), [king](#), [majesty](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**stiff-necked, stubborn****Definition:**

The term “stiff-necked” is an idiom used in the Bible to describe people who keep disobeying God and refuse to repent. They are very proud and will not submit to God’s authority.

- Similarly, the term “stubborn” means to refuse to change one’s mind or actions even when urged to do so. Stubborn people will not listen to good advice or warnings that other people give them.
- The Old Testament described the Israelites as “stiff-necked” because they did not listen to the many messages from God’s prophets who urged them to repent and turn back to Yahweh.
- If a neck is “stiff” it means that it does not bend easily. The project language may have a different idiom that communicates that a person is “unbending” that is, refusing to change his ways.
- Other ways to translate this term could include, “pridefully stubborn” or “arrogant and unyielding” or “refusing to change.”

(See also: [arrogant](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [proud](#), [pride](#), [prideful](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## storehouse

### Definition:

A “storehouse” is a large building that is used for keeping food or other things, often for a long time.

- In the Bible a “storehouse” was usually used to store extra grain and other food to be used later when there was a shortage of food because of famine.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to all the good things that God wants to give to his people.
- The storehouses of the temple contained valuable things, such as gold and silver, that had been dedicated to Yahweh. Some of these things were used to repair and maintain the temple.
- Other ways to translate “storehouse” could include, “a building for storing grain” or “place for keeping food” or “room for keeping valuable things safe.”

(See also: [consecrate](#), [dedicate](#), [dedication](#), [famine](#), [gold](#), [grain](#), [silver](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## strong drink

### Definition:

The term “strong drink” refers to drinks that have been fermented and have alcohol in them.

- Alcoholic drinks are made from either grain or fruit and have undergone a process of fermentation.
- Kinds of “strong drink” include grape wine, palm wine, beer, and apple cider. In the Bible, grape wine is the most frequently mentioned strong drink.
- Priests and anyone who took a special vow such as the “Nazirite vow” were not permitted to drink fermented drinks.
- This term could also be translated as, “fermented drink” or “alcoholic drink.”

(See also: [grape](#), [Nazirite](#), [Nazirite vow](#), [vow](#), [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **stronghold, fortress, fortified**

### **Definition:**

The terms “stronghold” and “fortress” both refer to places that are well protected against an attack by enemy soldiers. The term “fortified” describes a city or other place that has been made safe from attack.

- Often, strongholds and fortresses are manmade structures with defensive walls. They can also be natural protective barriers such as rocky cliffs or high mountains.
- People fortify strongholds by building thick walls or other structures that make it difficult for an enemy to break through.
- “Stronghold” or “fortress” could be translated as “securely strong place” or “strongly protected place.”
- The term “fortified city” could be translated as “securely protected city” or “strongly built city.”
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to God as a stronghold or fortress for those who trust in him. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Another figurative meaning for the term “stronghold” refers to something that someone wrongly trusts in for security, such as a false god or other thing that is worshiped instead of Yahweh. This could be translated as, “false strongholds.”
- This term should be translated differently from “refuge,” which emphasizes safety more than the concept of being fortified.

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [refuge](#), [shelter](#), [Yahweh](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## stumble

### Definition:

The term “stumble” means to “almost fall” when walking or running. Usually it involves tripping over something.

- Figuratively, “to stumble” can mean “to sin” or “to falter” in believing.
- This term can also refer to faltering or showing weakness when fighting a battle or when being persecuted or punished.

### Translation Suggestions

- In contexts where the term “stumble” means to physically trip over something, it should be translated with a term that means “almost fall” or “trip over.”
- This literal meaning could also be used in a figurative context, if it communicates the correct meaning in that context.
- For figurative uses where the literal meaning would not make sense in the project language, “stumble” could be translated as, “sin” or “falter” or “stop believing” or “become weak,” depending [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) on the context.
- Another way to translate this term could be, “stumble by sinning” or “stumble by not believing.”
- The phrase “made to stumble” could be translated as “caused to become weak” or “caused to falter.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [persecute](#), [persecution](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [stumbling block](#), [stone of stumbling](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## sword

### Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- The blade of a sword in ancient times was around 60 to 91 centimeters long.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called “double-edged” or “two-edged” swords.
- Jesus’ disciples had swords they planned to use to defend themselves. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest’s servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

### Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God’s word. God’s teachings in the Bible expose people’s innermost thoughts and convict them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, “God’s word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin.”
- Another figurative use of this term is in the book of Psalms where the tongue or speech of a person is compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as, “the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone.”
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a “sharp weapon” or “long knife.” Some translations may decide to include a picture of a sword.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [tongue](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## tent

### Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents made of sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he made tents to earn money to support himself.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses." (See: [Synecdoche](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [curtain](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [Sinai](#), [Mount Sinai](#), [tabernacle](#), [tent of meeting](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## testimony, testify

### Definition:

The terms “testimony” and “testify” refer to making a statement about something that one knows to be true.

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term is often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, “to show them what is true” or “to prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”

(See: [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of the testimony](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [witness](#), [eyewitness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## thorn, thistle

### Facts:

Thorn bushes and thistles are plants that have prickly branches or flowers. These plants do not produce fruit or anything else that is useful.

- A “thorn” is a hard, sharp growth on the branch or stem of a plant. A “thornbush” is a type of small tree or shrub that has many thorns on its branches.
- A “thistle” is a plant with prickly stems and leaves. Often the flowers are purple.
- Thorn and thistle plants multiply quickly and can cause nearby plants or crops to not be able to grow. This is a picture of how sin keeps a person from producing good spiritual fruit.
- A crown made of twisted thorn branches was placed on Jesus’ head before he was crucified.
- If possible, these terms should be translated by the names of two different plants or bushes that are known in the language area.

(See also: [crown](#), [to crown](#), [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **thresh, threshing**

### **Definition:**

The terms “thresh” and “threshing” refer to the first part of the process of separating wheat grain from the rest of the wheat plant.

- Threshing the wheat plant loosens the grain from the straw and the chaff. Afterwards the grain is “winnowed” to completely separate the grain from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a “threshing floor” was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A “threshing cart” or “threshing wheel” was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A “threshing sledge” or “threshing board” was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: [chaff](#), [grain](#), [winnow](#), [sift](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## true, truth, come true

### Definition:

The terms “true” and “truth” refer to concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said.

- True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
- The expression “come true” or “came true” is an expression that means that a prophecy actually happened as it was predicted that it would.
- Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- God’s word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include, “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as, “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as, “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as, “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as, “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by, “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** The snake responded to the woman, “That is not **true**! You will not die.”
- **[14-06]** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, “It is **true** that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!”
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the **true** God.

- [31-08] They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- [39-10] "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

## **trumpet**

### **Definition:**

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel’s public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [assembly](#), [assemble](#), [earth](#), [earthly](#), [horn](#), [horns](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [wrath](#), [fury](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness

### Definition:

The term “trust” refers to believing that something or someone is true or dependable. A “trustworthy” person can be relied on to do and say what is right and true.

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God and that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include, “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as, “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: , [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [confidence](#), [confident](#), [faith](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [12-12] When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- [14-15] Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [17-02] David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [34-06] Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

## turn, turn away, turn back

### Definition:

To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as, “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as, “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, when Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshiping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as, “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression, “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as, “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as, “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake.” It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: [idol](#), [leprosy](#), [leper](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## Tyre, Tyrians

### Facts:

Tyre was an ancient Canaanite city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, in a region that is now part of the modern-day country of Lebanon. Its people were called “Tyrians.”

- Part of the city was also located on an island in the sea, about one kilometer from the coast.
- Because of its location and valuable natural resources such as cedar trees, Tyre had a prosperous trading industry and was very wealthy.
- King Hiram of Tyre sent wood from cedar trees and skilled laborers for building a palace for King David.
- Years later, Hiram also gave King Solomon wood and skilled laborers for building the temple. Solomon paid him with large amounts of wheat and olive oil.
- Tyre was often associated with the nearby ancient city of Sidon. These were the most important cities of the region of Canaan called Phoenicia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [cedar](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [the sea](#), [the Great Sea](#), [the western sea](#), [Mediterranean Sea](#), [Phoenicia](#), [Sidon](#), [Sidonians](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## unclean

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: [clean](#), [cleanse](#), [defile](#), [be defiled](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [unholy](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **understand, understanding**

### **Definition:**

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [know](#), [knowledge](#), [make known](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## unfaithful, unfaithfulness

### Definition:

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “unfaithful” could be translated as, “not faithful” or “unbelieving” or “not obedient” or “not loyal.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as, “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- The term “unfaithfulness” could be translated as, “disobedience” or “disloyalty” or “not believing or obeying.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [unbeliever](#), [unbelief](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **unjust, unjustly, injustice**

### **Definition:**

The terms “unjust” and “unjustly” refer to treating people in an unfair, and often, harmful manner.

- An “injustice” is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being “partial” or “prejudiced” because he is not treating people equally.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as, “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

(See also: [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Uzziah, Azariah

### Facts:

Uzziah became king of Judah at the age of 16 and reigned 52 years, which was an unusually long reign. Uzziah was also known as “Azariah.”

- King Uzziah was well-known for his organized and skilled military. He had towers built to protect the city and had specially-designed weapons of war mounted on them to hurl arrows and large stones.
- As long as Uzziah served the Lord, he prospered. Toward the end of his reign, however, he became proud and he disobeyed the Lord by burning incense in the temple, which only the priest was permitted to do.
- Because of this sin, Uzziah became sick with leprosy and had to live separately from other people until the end of his reign.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [king](#), [leprosy](#), [leper](#), [leprous](#), [reign](#), [watchtower](#), [tower](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**vine****Definition:**

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means, “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [grape](#), [vineyard](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## **vineyard**

### **Definition:**

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Vineyard could be also translated as, “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: [grape](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [vine](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting



**vision****Facts:**

The term “vision” refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

**Translation Suggestion**

- The phrase “saw a vision” could be translated as, “saw something unusual from God” or “God showed him something special.”
- Some languages may not have separate words for “vision” and “dream.” So a sentence such as, “Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind” could be translated as something like, “Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things.”

(See also: [dream](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## walk

### Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [\[:en:obe:other:obey\]](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **waste, wasteland**

### **Definition:**

To waste something means to carelessly throw it away or to use it unwisely. Something that is a “wasteland” or a “waste” refers to land or a city that has been destroyed so that nothing lives in it anymore.

- The term “waste away” is an expression that means to become more and more sick or ruined. A person who is wasting away usually becomes very thin due to illness or lack of food.
- To “lay waste” a city or land means to destroy it.
- Another word for a “wasteland” could be “desert” or “wilderness.” But a wasteland also implies that people used to live there and the land used to have trees and plants that produced food.

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**watch, watchman****Definition:**

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include, “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## water, waters

### Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as, “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as, “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## well, cistern

### Definition:

The terms “well” and “cistern” refer to two different kinds of sources for water in Bible times.

- A well is a deep hole dug into the ground so that underground water can flow into it.
- A cistern is a deep hole dug into rock that was used as a holding tank for collecting rain water.
- Cisterns were usually dug into rock and sealed with plaster to keep the water in. A “broken cistern” happened when the plaster became cracked so that the water leaked out.
- Cisterns were often located in the courtyard area of people’s homes to catch the rainwater that would run off the roof.
- Wells were often located where they could be accessed by several families or a whole community.
- Because water was very important for both people and livestock, the right to use a well was often a cause of strife and conflict.
- Both wells and cisterns were usually covered with a large stone to prevent anything falling in it. Often there was a rope with a bucket or pot attached to it to bring the water up to the surface.
- Sometimes a dry cistern was used as a place to imprison someone, such as happened to Joseph and Jeremiah.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “well” could include, “deep water hole” or “deep hole for spring water” or “deep hole for drawing water.”
- The term “cistern” could be translated as “stone water pit” or “deep and narrow pit for water” or “underground tank for holding water.”
- These terms are similar in meaning. The main difference is that a well continually receives water from underground springs, whereas a cistern is a holding tank for water that usually comes from rain.

(See also: [courtyard](#), [court](#), [Jeremiah](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [prison](#), [prisoner](#), [imprison](#), [strife](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## wine, wineskin, new wine

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also refer to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as, “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include, “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: [grape](#), [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [winepress](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

smashed

## winepress

### Definition:

During Bible times, a “winepress” was a large container or open place where the juice of grapes was extracted in order to make wine.

- In Israel, winepresses were usually large, wide basins that were dug out of solid rock. Clusters of grapes were put on the flat bottom of the hole and people trampled the grapes with their feet to get the grape juice to flow out.
- Usually a winepress had two levels, with the grapes being trampled in the top level so that the juice would run down into the lower level where it could be collected.
- The term “winepress” is also used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of God’s wrath being poured out on wicked people. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [grape](#), [wrath](#), [fury](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## wise, wisdom

### Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- In the Bible, the term “worldly wisdom” is a figurative way of referring to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love and patience.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include, “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See: [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [fruit](#), [fruitful](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-05] She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- [18-01] When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- [23-09] Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- [45-01] He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

**woe****Definition:**

The term “woe” refers to a feeling of great distress. It also gives a warning that someone will experience severe trouble.

- The expression “woe to” is followed by a warning to people that they will experience suffering as punishment for their sins.
- In several places in the Bible, the word “woe” is repeated, to emphasize an especially terrible judgment.
- A person who says, “woe is me” or “woe to me” is expressing sorrow about severe suffering.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term “woe” could also be translated as “great sorrow” or “sadness” or “calamity” or “disaster.”
- Other ways to translate the expression, “Woe to (name of city)” could include, “How terrible it will be for (name of city)” or “(The people in) that city will be severely punished” or “Those people will suffer greatly.”
- The expression, “Woe is me!” or “Woe to me!” could be translated as “How sad I am!” or “I am so sad” or “How terrible this is for me!”
- The expression, “Woe to you” could also be translated as “You will suffer terribly” or “You will experience terrible troubles.”

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**womb****Definition:**

The term “womb” refers to where a baby grows inside its mother.

- This is an older term that is sometimes used in order to be polite and less direct. (See: [Euphemism](#))
- A more modern term for womb is “uterus.”
- Some languages use a word like “belly” to refer to a woman’s womb or uterus.
- Use a word for this in the project language that is well-known, natural, and acceptable.

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## **word**

### **Definition:**

A “word” refers to something that someone has said.

- An example of this would be when the angel told Zechariah, “You did not believe my words,” which means, “You did not believe what I said.”
- This term almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.
- Often in the Bible “the word” refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in “the word of God” or “the word of truth.”
- Sometimes “word” refers to speech in general, such as “powerful in word and deed” which means “powerful in speech and behavior.”
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called “the Word.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Different ways of translating “word” or “words” include, “teaching” or “message” or “news” or “a saying” or “what was said.”
- When it refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Saying.”

(See also: [word of God](#), [God’s word](#), [scripture](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture**

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures or “Old Testament.” These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people can still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as, “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone, it could be translated as “message” or “God’s word” or “teachings,” depending on the context. Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.

(See also: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [word](#), [Yahweh](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[25-07]** In **God’s word** he commands his people, ‘Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **[33-06]** So Jesus explained, ”The seed is the **word of God**.

- [42-03] Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- [42-07] Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- [45-10] Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- [48-12] But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- [49-18] God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

## works, deeds, work, acts

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “works,” “deeds,” and “acts” are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- The term “work” refers to doing labor or anything that is done to serve other people.
- God’s “works” and the “work of his hands” are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms “deeds” and “acts” are also used to refer to God’s miracles in expressions such as, “mighty acts” or “marvelous deeds.”
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called “good fruit.”
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- A person’s “work” can be what he does to earn a living or to serve God. The Bible also refers to God as “working.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” or “deeds” could be, “actions” or “things that are done.”
- When referring to God’s “works” or “deeds” and the “work of his hands,” these expressions could also be translated as, “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “amazing things he does.”
- The expression, “the work of God” could be translated as, “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “the amazing things that God does” or “everything God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in, “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- The term “work” can also have the broader meaning of “service” or “ministry.” For example, the expression, “your work in the Lord” could also be translated as, “what you do for the Lord.”
- The expression, “examine your own work” could also be translated as, “make sure what you are doing is God’s will” or “make sure that what you are doing pleases God.”
- The expression “the work of the Holy Spirit” could be translated as, “the empowering of the Holy Spirit” or “the ministry of the Holy Spirit” or “the things that the Holy Spirit does.”

(See: [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## worship

### Definition:

“To worship” means to honor, praise and obey someone, especially God.

- This term often means literally, “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- Some people worship false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [praise](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-04]** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **[14-02]** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **[17-06]** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **[18-12]** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **[25-07]** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, “**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.””
- **[26-02]** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **[47-01]** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **[49-18]** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.



**wrath, fury****Definition:**

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. It especially refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.

- In the Bible, "wrath" usually refers to God's anger toward those who sin against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include, "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage. God's wrath is just and holy.

(See: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## Yahweh

### Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name that he revealed when he spoke to Moses at the burning bush.

- The name “Yahweh” comes from the word that means, “to be” or “to exist.”
- Possible meanings of “Yahweh” include, “he is” or “I am” or “the one who causes to be.”
- This name reveals that God has always lived and will continue to live forever. It also means that he is always present.
- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULB and UDB texts always translate this term as, “Yahweh,” as it literally occurs in the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” does not ever occur in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even in quotes from the Old Testament.

### Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [Lord](#), [Moses](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-14]** God said, “I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, ‘I AM has sent me to you.’ Also tell them, ‘I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.’”

- **[13-04]** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **[13-05]** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **[19-10]** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

## Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host

### Definition:

The terms “Yahweh of hosts” and “God of hosts” are titles that express God’s authority over the thousands of angels who obey him.

- The term “host” or “hosts” is a word that refers to a large number of something, such as an army of people or the massive number of stars. It can also refer to all the many spirit beings, including evil spirits. The context makes it clear what is being referred to.
- Phrases similar to “host of the heavens” refer to all the stars, planets and other heavenly bodies.
- In the New Testament, the phrase, “Lord of hosts” means the same as “Yahweh of hosts” but it cannot be translated that way since the Hebrew word “Yahweh” is not used in the New Testament.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “Yahweh of hosts” could include, “Yahweh, who rules all the angels” or “Yahweh, the ruler over armies of angels” or “Yahweh, the ruler of all creation.”
- The phrase “of hosts” in the terms “God of hosts” and “Lord of hosts” would be translated the same way as in the phrase “Yahweh of hosts” above.
- Certain churches do not accept the literal term “Yahweh” and prefer to use the capitalized word, “LORD” instead, following the tradition of many Bible versions. For these churches, a translation of the term “LORD of hosts” would be used in the Old Testament for “Yahweh of hosts.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [authority](#), [God](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [Lord](#), [Lord Yahweh](#), [Yahweh God Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## yoke

### Definition:

A yoke is a piece of wood or metal attached to two or more animals to connect them for the purpose of pulling a plow or a cart. There are also several figurative meanings for this term.

- The term “yoke” is used figuratively to refer to something that joins people for the purpose of working together, such as in serving Jesus.
- Paul used the term “yokefellow” to refer to someone who was serving Christ as he was. This could also be translated as “fellow worker” or “fellow servant” or “coworker.”
- The term “yoke” is also often used figuratively to refer to a heavy load that someone has to carry, such as when being oppressed by slavery or persecution.
- In most contexts, it is best to translate this term literally, using the local term for a yoke that is used for farming.
- Other ways to translate the figurative use of this term could be, “oppressive burden” or “heavy load” or “bond,” depending on the context.

(See also: [bind](#), [bond](#), [bound](#), [burden](#), [oppress](#), [oppression](#), [oppressor](#), [persecute](#), [persecution](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## translationAcademy

### First, Second or Third Person

*This answers the question: What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit*
- *Pronouns*

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker referred to himself or to the person he was speaking to with a phrase other than “I” or “you”.

#### Description

#### Definitions

- **First person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we”. (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- **Second person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- **Third person** - This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker used the third person to refer to himself or the people he was speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

#### Examples from the Bible

Sometimes people uses the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “*Your servant* used to keep *his* father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULB)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,  
 “... Do you have an arm like *God’s*? Can you thunder with a voice like *him*? (Job 40:6, 9 ULB)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “him.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful. Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look what I have done, taking it upon myself to speak to *my Lord*, even though I am only dust and ashes! (Genesis 18:27 ULB)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if *each of you* does not forgive *his* brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULB)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

### Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
2. Simply use the first or second person.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”

- **But David said to Saul, “Your servant used to keep his father’s sheep.”** (1 Samuel 17:34)
  - But David said to Saul, “I, your servant, used to keep my father’s sheep.”

2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”).

- **Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like God’s? Can you thunder with a voice like him?”** (Job 40:6, 9 ULB)
  - Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like mine? Can you thunder with a voice like me?”
- **So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive his brother from your heart.** (Matthew 18:35 ULB)
  - So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if *each of you* does not forgive *your* brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Forms of You*

## Abstract Nouns

This answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, injury, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it. For example, "What is its *weight*?" could be expressed as "How much does it *weigh*?" or "How *heavy* is it?"

### Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **ABSTRACT NOUNS** are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, and weight.

Abstract nouns allow us to express thoughts about ideas in fewer words than if we did not have those nouns. For example, we can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But if English did not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," then we would have to make a longer sentence to express the same meaning. We would have to say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned."

Abstract nouns also allow us to refer to a situation without telling more details about it than we want to tell. For example, we can say "I got here late because there was an accident on the highway." "Accident" is an abstract noun. If it does not matter whose accident it was, or what kind of accident it was, then it can be better if I do not have to say these things about it.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will have other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs, that express some of the meaning in the abstract noun.

### Examples from the Bible

from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But *godliness* with *contentment* is great *gain*. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)



The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today *salvation* has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

### Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.

- **from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings** (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)
  - ”Ever since *you were a child* you have known the sacred writings.”
- **But *godliness with contentment* is great *gain*.** (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)
  - ”But *being godly* and *content* is very *beneficial*.”
  - ”But we *benefit* greatly when we *are godly* and *content*.”
  - ”But we *benefit* greatly when we *honor and obey God* and when we are *happy with what we have*.
- **Today *salvation* has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham.** (Luke 19:9 ULB)
  - ”Today the people in this house *have been saved*...”
  - ”Today God *has saved* the people in this house...”
- **The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to be** (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

- "The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *moving slowly* to be"
- **He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart.**  
(1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)
  - "He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal *the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.*"

## Active or Passive

*This answers the question: What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Sentence Structure*
- *Verbs*

Some languages have both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences the subject is the one that the action is done to. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- **ACTIVE:** *My father* built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** *The house* was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not have passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when not to.

### Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

**ACTIVE:** *My father* built the house in 2010.

**PASSIVE:** *The house* was built by my father in 2010.

**PASSIVE:** *The house* was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

All languages have active forms. Some languages have passive forms, and some do not. The passive form is not used for the same reasons in all of the languages that have it.

### Purposes for the passive:

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

## Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

## Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants *were killed*, and your servant Uriah the Hittite *was killed* too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULB)

This means that the enemies shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal *was broken down* ... (Judges 6:28 ULB)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down.

No stonework *was seen* there. (1 Kings 6:18 ULB)

This means that no one saw stonework there. The point is that no stonework was done there.

## Translation Strategies

If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action.
3. Use a different verb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
  - *The king's servants gave* Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead use a generic expression like "they," or "people," or "someone."

- **It would be better for him if a millstone *were put* around his neck and he *were thrown* into the sea** (Luke 17:2 ULB)
  - It would be better for him if *they were to put* a millstone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.
  - It would be better for him if *someone were to put* a heavy stone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.

3. Use a different verb in an active sentence.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
  - He *received* a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Abstract Nouns*
- *Word Order*

## Apostrophe

*This answers the question: What is the figure of speech called apostrophe?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him. This calls his listener's attention to his feelings toward that person or thing.

Mountains of Gilboa, Let there not be dew or rain on you (2 Samuel 1:21 ULB)

King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling the mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.

### Description

Apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him. This calls his listener's attention to his feelings toward that person or thing.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to.

### Examples from the Bible

Come now, you who are rich, cry out loud because of the miseries coming upon you.  
(James 5:1 ULB)

James wrote to the church, which was made up of poor people, as if rich people could hear him, showing his anger about what rich people were doing.

The man of God cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh and said, "Altar, altar, Yahweh says, '... on you they will burn men's bones.'" (1 Kings 13:2 ULB)

The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.

### Translation Strategies

If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. Have the speaker express his feelings toward the thing or idea without speaking directly to it.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. If this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, you may preserve the meaning of the apostrophe and let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him.

- **The man of God cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh and said, "Altar, altar, Yahweh says, ' ... on you they will burn men's bones.' " (1 Kings 13:2 ULB)**
  - "The man of God said, "This is what Yahweh says *about this altar*' ... They will burn men's bones on *it*."

## Doublet

*This answers the question: What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

A doublet is a pair of words used together that mean nearly the same nearly thing. In some languages people do not use doublets, or they may use them only in certain situations. Translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning.

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean “very old.”

### Description

We are using the word doublet to refer to two words or very short phrases that mean the same thing and that are used in the same phrase. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Often they are used to emphasize or intensify the idea expressed by the two words.

### Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but they may do it for a reason that would not fit in a particular verse.

### Examples from the Bible

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

This means that he was “very old.”

he attacked two men *more righteous* and *better* than himself (1 Kings 2:32 ULB)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

This means that they had prepared “many false things to say.”

as of a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot*. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any blemish—not even one.



## Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using one. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use your culture’s way of doing that.

## Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate only one of the words.

- **You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words** (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

- “You have decided to prepare *false* things to say.”

2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

- **King David was *old* and *advanced in years***. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

- “King David was *very old*.”

3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

- **a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot***. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

- “a lamb *without any blemish at all*”

## Ellipsis

*This answers the question: What is ellipsis?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Ellipsis is where a speaker or writer leaves one or more words out of a sentence because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and fill in the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there.

### Description

Ellipsis is where one or more words are left out of the sentence because the sentence can be understood without them. The information that is omitted has usually already been stated in a preceding sentence or phrase.

the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous  
(Psalm 1:5)

This is ellipsis because “sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know what the missing information is.

### Examples from the Bible

when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?”  
He said, “Lord, *that I might receive my sight.*” (Luke 18:40-41 ULB)

The man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite by giving Jesus only as much information as necessary. He did not say that he wanted Jesus to heal him, because he knew that Jesus would understand that if he wanted to receive his sight, Jesus would have to heal him.

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf *and Sirion like a young ox.* (Psalm 29:6 ULB)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. He did not say that Yahweh makes Sirion skip like a young ox because he knew that his readers could fill in the information themselves.

## Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

- **the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor *sinner*s in the assembly of the righteous** (Psalm 1:5)
  - "the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and *sinner*s will not stand in the assembly of the righteous"
- **when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, *that I might receive my sight.*"** (Luke 18:40-41)
  - "when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, 'What do you want me to do for you?' He said, 'Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight.'"
- **He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6)
  - "He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox."

## Euphemism

*This answers the question: What is a Euphemism?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

### Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)

This means that Saul and his sons were dead. It is euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Readers may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

### Examples from the Bible

where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so he does not say specifically what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

whether we are awake or asleep (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)

Paul refers to being dead as being “asleep” so that instead of thinking that they will never see their loved ones again in this life, his readers will remember that they will see them again when Jesus establishes his kingdom.

### Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.

- **where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself** (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
  - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet”
  - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to dig a hole”
  - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to have some time alone”

2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

- **whether we are awake or asleep** (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)
  - “whether we are alive or dead”

## Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

*This answers the question: What are assumed knowledge, implicit information, and explicit information?*

**Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. There are two types information.

- **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
- **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

### Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, although what he says may remind them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly is **implicit information**.

### Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes *have holes*, and the birds of the sky *have nests*, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULB)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**. Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the

people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For *they do not wash their hands when they eat*. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. They were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit*

## Generic Noun Phrases

*This answers the question: What are generic noun phrases and how can I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Parts of Speech*

Generic noun phrases refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things.

The one who does what is right is kept away from trouble and it comes upon the wicked instead. (Proverbs 11:8 ULB)

The underlined phrases above do not refer to any specific people but to anyone who does what is right or anyone who is wicked.

Different languages have different ways of showing that a phrase refers to something in general. Translators should use ways of doing this that are natural in their language.

### Description

Generic noun phrases refers to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things. This happens frequently in proverbs, because proverbs tell about things that are true about people in general.

Can a man walk on hot coals without scorching his feet?  
So is the man who goes into his neighbor's wife;  
the one who has relations with her will not go unpunished. (Proverbs 6:28 ULB)

The underlined phrases above do not refer to a specific man. They refer to any man who does these things.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of showing that noun phrases refer to something in general. Translators should refer to these general ideas in ways that are natural in their language.

### Examples from the Bible

People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain (Proverbs 11:26 ULB)

This does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who refuses to sell grain.

Yahweh gives favor to a good man, but he condemns a man who makes evil plans.  
(Proverbs 12:2 ULB)



The phrase “a good man” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who is good. The phrase “a man who makes evil plans” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who makes evil plans.

### Translation Strategies

If your language can use the same wording as in the ULB to refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things, consider using the same wording. Here are some strategies you might use.

1. Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.
2. Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.
3. Use the word “any,” as in “any person” or “anyone.”
4. Use the plural form, as in “people.”
5. Use any other way that is natural in your language.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.

- **Yahweh gives favor to *a good man*, but he condemns *a man who makes evil plans*.** (Proverbs 12:2 ULB)
- “Yahweh gives favor to *the good man*, but he condemns *the man who makes evil plans*.” (Proverbs 12:2)

**The following examples show how the strategies may be applied to a noun phrase that has “the” in it. Use the strategy that is most natural in your language:**

- **People curse *the man who refuses to sell them grain*.** (Proverbs 11:26 ULB)
2. Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.
    - “People curse *a man* who refuses to sell them grain”
  3. Use the word “any,” as in “any person” or “anyone.”
    - “People curse *any man* who refuses to sell them grain”
  4. Use the plural form, as in “people” (or in this sentence, “men”).
    - “People curse *men* who refuse to sell them grain”
  5. Use any other way that is natural in your language.
    - “People curse *whoever* refuses to sell them grain.”

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *When Masculine Words Include Women*

## Hyperbole

*This answers the question: What is hyperbole?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. He may greatly exaggerate something in order to show his strong feeling or opinion about it, or he may generalize the situation by using words like “every” or “all” to mean “many.”

### Description

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. There are two kinds of hyperbole:

1. Exaggeration: This is when a speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it.

Whoever does not *carry his own cross* and come after me cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:27 ULB) - This is an exaggeration. It means that whoever wants to be Jesus’ disciple must be determined to follow him faithfully, even if his enemies were to kill that person.

2. Generalization: This is when a speaker uses words like “every” or “all” to mean something like “very many,” but not “every one.” (Some people may not call generalization like this “hyperbole.”)

Moses was educated in *all the learning of the Egyptians* (Acts 7:22 ULB) - This is a generalization. It means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught.

### Reason this is a translation issue

If readers do not understand that a statement is a hyperbole, they may either think that something happened that did not happen, or they may think that the speaker or writer was saying something that is not true.

### Examples from the Bible

#### Examples of Exaggeration

If your hand causes you to stumble, *cut it off*. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULB)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:26 ULB)

Because of many other things that Jesus said, we know that his use of the word “hate” here is hyperbole. He meant that we must not love even our own family members more than we love him. We must love him more than we love ourselves or anyone else.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

### Examples of Generalization

They found him, and they said to him, “*Everyone* is looking for you.” (Mark 1:37 ULB)

The disciples told Jesus that everyone was looking looking for him. They probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for him, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus closest friends there were looking for him.

But as his anointing teaches you about *all things* and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULB)

This is a generalization. God’s Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know.

### Caution

Do not assume that something is hyperbole just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

... they saw Jesus *walking on the sea* and coming near the boat ... (John 6:19 ULB)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

... for *all* have sinned and come short of the glory of God. (Romans 3:23 ULB)

The word “all” here is not hyperbole. All humans have sinned. The only human who has never sinned is Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

## Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole. For example “all the people” could be translated as “large crowds of people.”

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole.

- **If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple.** (Luke 14:26 ULB)
  - “If anyone comes to me and does not *love me much more than* he loves his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple.”
- **The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*.** (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)
  - “The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and *a great number of troops*.”

## Idiom

*This answers the question: What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

An idiom is a certain kind of figure of speech, the kind that usually cannot be correctly understood without being told its true meaning. Every language has them. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, “You are telling me a lie”)
- Do not push the envelope (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme”)
- This house is under water (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value”)
- We are painting the town red (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely”)

## Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture that uses it. Its meaning may be different from what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely *set his face* to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should *enter under my roof*. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The words “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Let these words go deeply into your ears (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

**Purpose:** An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that originally wrote the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.

### Examples from the Bible

“Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, ”Look, we are your flesh and bone.”  
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

The kings of the earth take their stand together (Psalm 2:2 ULB)

This means, “The kings on earth plan together.”

the one who lifts up my head” (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

### Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

- **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.”** (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
  - “...Look, we all belong to the same nation.”
- **he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.** (Luke 9:51 ULB)
  - “He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.”
- **I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof.** (Luke 7:6 ULB)
  - “I am not worthy that you should enter my house.”

2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

- **Let these words go deeply into your ears** (Luke 9:44 ULB)
  - “Be all ears when I say these words to you.”
- **”My eyes grow dim from grief** (Psalm 6:7ULB)
  - “I am crying my eyes out”

## Metaphor

*This answers the question: What is a metaphor and how can I translate a sentence that has one?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- [Figures of Speech](#)
- [Simile](#)

### Description

A metaphor is the use of words to speak of one thing as if it were a different thing. Sometimes a speaker does this in ways that are very common in the language. At other times, a speaker does this in ways that are less common in the language and that might even be unique.

1. First we will discuss very common metaphors.

The metaphors that are very common in a language are usually not very vivid. They may even be “dead.” Examples in English are “table leg,” “family tree,” and “the price of food is going up.” Examples in biblical languages are “hand” to mean “power,” “face” to mean “presence,” and “clothing” to mean emotions or moral qualities.

Metaphors like these are in constant use in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, languages speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that can be seen or held, or as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that you can watch happen.

When these metaphors are used in their normal ways, the speaker and audience do not normally even regard them as figurative language. This is why, for example, it would be wrong to translate the English expression, “The price of petrol is going up” into another language in a way that would draw undeserved attention to it, because English speakers do not view it as a vivid expression, that is, as an unusual expression that carries meaning in an unusual manner.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor, please see [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

2. Next we will discuss the less common metaphors, metaphors that are sometimes even unique in a language.

The speaker usually produces metaphors of this kind in order to emphasize the importance of what he is talking about. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
(Malachi 4:2 ULB)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. And he speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people.

We call this kind of metaphor “live.” It is unique in the biblical languages, which means that it is very memorable.

## Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. The thing someone speaks of is called the **topic**. The thing he calls it is the **image**. The way that they are similar is the **point of comparison**.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a rose. The woman (his “love”) is the topic and the red rose is the image. Both are beautiful and delicate.

- My love is a red, red rose.

1. Sometimes the **topic** and the **image** are both stated clearly.

Jesus said to them. *“I am the bread of life. He who comes to me will not hunger, and he who believes on me will never thirst.”* (John 6:35 ULB)

Jesus called himself the bread of life. The topic is “I” and the image is “bread.” Bread is a food that people ate all the time. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have spiritual life.

2. Sometimes only the **image** is stated clearly.

Produce *fruits* that are worthy of repentance (Luke 3:8 ULB)

The image here is “fruits”. The topic is not stated, but it is actions or behavior. Trees can produce good fruit or bad fruit, and people can produce good behavior or bad behavior. Fruits that are worthy of repentance are good behavior that is appropriate for people who have repented.

## Purposes of this second kind of metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel toward another.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not realize that a word is being used as an image in a metaphor.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know how the topic and the image are alike.

## Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.



- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than it was to the original audience.

### Examples from the Bible

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two metaphors. The topics are “we” and “you” and the images are “clay and ”potter.” Just as a potter takes clay and forms a jar or dish out of it, God makes us into what he wants us to be.

Jesus said to them, ”Take heed and beware of *the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.*” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the image in his metaphor about the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

### Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”
3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

- **For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he fell asleep*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay,** (Acts 13:36 ULB)

- "For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he died*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay."

2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding "like" or "as."

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are *like* clay. You are *like* a potter; and we all are the work of your hand."

3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to *kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)

- "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick."

4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *wood*. You are our *carver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *string*. You are the *weaver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.

- **I will make you become *fishers of men*.** (Mark 1:17 ULB )

- "I will make you become *people who gather men*."

- "Now you gather fish. I will make you *gather people*."

6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)

- "Yahweh lives; *He is my rock*. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
  - "Yahweh lives; may he be praised because like a huge rock, *he shields me from my enemies*. May the God of my salvation be exalted."
- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you *to kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
  - "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You *fight against me and hurt yourself* like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick."

To learn more about common metaphors read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#)

## Metonymy

*This answers the question: What is a metonymy?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Many times the Bible uses metonymy. If you do not recognize it as a metonymy you will not understand the passage or worse yet, get the wrong understanding of the passage.

### Description

**Metonymy** is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

and *the blood* of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

### Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a concrete object associated with it.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- If a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

### Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. Throne is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or, "reign." This means that God would make him become the king who was to follow King David.

Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

who warned you to flee from *the wrath* that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word “wrath” or “anger” is a metonym for “punishment.” God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

### Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here is an option.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

- **He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.** (Luke 22:20 ULB)
  - “He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*The wine in this cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

- **The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David.** (Luke 1:32 ULB)
  - “The Lord God will give him *the kingly authority* of his father, David.”
  - “The Lord God will *make him king* like his ancestor, King David.”
- **who warned you to flee from *the wrath* to come?** (Luke 3:7 ULB)
  - “who warned you to flee from God’s coming *punishment*?”

To learn about some common metonymies, we suggest you read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies](#)

## Parables

*This answers the question: What is a parable?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

A parable is a short story that makes truth easy to understand and hard to forget.

### Description

A parable is a short story that is told to teach a truth. Though the events in a parable could happen, they did not actually happen. They are told only to teach a truth. Parables rarely contain the names of specific people. (This may help you identify what is a parable and what is an account of a real event.) Parables often have figures of speech such as simile and metaphor.

Then he also told them a parable. “Can a blind person guide another blind person? If he did, they would both fall into a pit, would they not?” (Luke 6:39 ULB)

This parable teaches that if a person does not have spiritual understanding, he cannot help someone else to understand spiritual things.

### Examples from the Bible

Neither do people light a lamp and put it under a basket, but rather, on the lampstand, and it shines for everyone in the house. Let your light shine before people in such a way that they see your good deeds and praise your Father who is in heaven. (Matthew 5:15-16 ULB)

This parable teaches us not to hide the way we live for God from other people.

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.” (Matthew 13:31-32 ULB)

This parable teaches that the kingdom of God may seem small at first, but it will grow and spread throughout the world.

### Translation Strategies

1. If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown things in it, you can replace the unknown things with things that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the teaching the same. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

2. If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as “Jesus told this story about being generous.”

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown things in it, you can replace the unknown things with things that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the teaching the same.

- **Jesus said to them, “Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand”.** (Mark 4:21 ULB) - If people do not know what a lampstand is, you could substitute something else that people put a light on so it can give light to the house.
  - Jesus said to them, “Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a *high shelf*.”
- **Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.”** (Matthew 13:31-32) - To sow seeds means to toss them so that they scatter on the ground. If people are not familiar with sowing, you can substitute planting.
  - “Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and *planted* in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.” ”

2. If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as “Jesus told this story about being generous.”

- **Jesus said to them, “Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand”.** (Mark 4:21 ULB)
  - *”Jesus told them a parable about why they should witness openly. “Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand.” ”* (Mark 4:21 ULB)
- **He said, “To what can we compare the kingdom of God and what parable can we use to explain it? It is like a mustard seed, which when it is sown it is the smallest of all the seeds sown that lay upon the ground. Yet when it is sown, it grows up and becomes greater than all the garden plants. It puts out great branches, so even the birds of heaven can make their nests under its shade.”** (Mark 4:30-32 ULB)

- *”He told them a story about how the Kingdom of God grows. “To what can we compare the kingdom of God and what parable can we use to explain it? It is like a mustard seed, which when it is sown it is the smallest of all the seeds sown that lay upon the ground. Yet when it is sown, it grows up and becomes greater than all the garden plants. It puts out great branches, so even the birds of heaven can make their nests under its shade.”*



## Parallelism

*This answers the question: What is parallelism?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

### Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use the kind of parallelism in which the two phrases mean the same thing. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning.

### Examples from the Bible

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;  
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULB)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,  
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULB)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

3. The second completes what is said in the first.

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,  
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULB)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,  
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULB)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,  
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULB)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

### **Translation Strategies**

1. For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases.
2. When the two clauses or phrases mean the same thing, some languages would not translate them both. (See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

### **Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#)

## Personification

*This answers the question: What is personification?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often speak this way because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom and sin.

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

Some languages do not use personification, and some languages use it only in certain situations.

### Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom, sin, and wind. For example:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about relationships between people and other people than about relationships between people and non-human things, such as wealth.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

### Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. They are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

## Translation Strategies

If the personification would not be understood clearly, here are some strategies for dealing with it.

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - God speaks of sin as a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

- “sin is at your door, waiting to attack you”

2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - This can be translated with the word “as.”

- “sin is about to destroy you, just *as* a wild animal could harm a person.”

3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

- **even the winds and the sea obey him** (Matthew 8:27 ULB) - The men speak of the wind and the sea as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

- “He even controls the winds and the sea.”

**Note:** We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had human characteristics).

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Apostrophe*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

## Direct and Indirect Quotations

This answers the question: What are direct and indirect quotations?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Pronouns*
- *Verbs*
- *Quotations and Quote Margins*

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotation and indirect quotation.

- Direct Quotation: John said, “I do not know at what time I will arrive.”
- Indirect Quotation: John said that he did not know what time he would arrive.

When translating a quotation, translators need to decide whether to translate it as a direct quotation or an indirect quotation.

Watch the video for computer (see <http://youtu.be/oe9Pbk8pFTw>) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/9ZKDMCWuCiw>).

### Description

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by direct or indirect quotations.

A **direct quotation** occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker’s exact words. In the example below, John would have said “I” when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is telling about John John saying this, uses the word in the quotation “I” to refer to John.

- John said, “*I* do not know at what time *I* will arrive.”

An **indirect quotation** occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead of from the original person’s point of view. This kind of quotation usually features changes in pronouns, and it often features changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as “he” in the quotation and uses the word “would,” which is the past tense of “will.”

- John said that *he* did not know what time *he* would arrive.

### Examples from the Bible

The verses in the examples below have both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have underlined the quotations.

He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULB)

- Indirect quote: He instructed him *to tell no one*,
- Direct quote: but told him, *”Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest...”*

Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come, Jesus answered them and said, “The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, ‘Look here!’ or, ‘Look there!’ because the kingdom of God is among you.” (Luke 17:20-21 ULB)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees *when the kingdom of God would come*,
- Direct quote: Jesus answered them and said, *”The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, ‘Look here!’ or, ‘Look there!’ because the kingdom of God is among you.”*
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, *’Look here!’* or, *’Look there!’*

### Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it.

1. If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
2. If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

- **He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, *”Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”*** (Luke 5:14 ULB)
  - He instructed him to tell no one, but *to go on his way, and show himself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for his cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”*

2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

- **He instructed him *to tell no one*, but told him, *“Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”*** (Luke 5:14 ULB)
  - He told him *”Tell no one. But go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”*

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Quotes within Quotes*

## Rhetorical Question

*This answers the question: What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express sarcasm or to rebuke or scold the hearer. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other reasons as well.

### Description

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers often use rhetorical questions to rebuke or scold people.

Those who stood by said, *Is this how you insult God's high priest?*" (Acts 23:4 ULB) The people did not ask this question in order to get information. Rather they used it to scold Paul because they did not think he should have spoken as he did to the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. Some of the purposes of these rhetorical questions are to remind people of something that they already know, to express strong emotion, to say something in a strong way, or to introduce something they want to talk about.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may think that a question is a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions only for scolding.
- Some readers might think that the purpose of a question is something other than what it really is.

### Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel he should feel free to take the man's property.

*Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!* (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a woman would never forget her jewelry and veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULB)

Job used the question above to show how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULB)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat.

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULB)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed which a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was going to compare the kingdom of God to something.

### **Translation Strategies**

Be sure you know that you are dealing with a rhetorical question and not an information question. Then be sure you know what the purpose of the rhetorical question is. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.



**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. Add the answer after the question.

- **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
  - *Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!*
- **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
  - *”Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? None of you would do that!”*

2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

- **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed...** (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)
  - *“This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed...”*
- **Is this how you insult God’s high priest?** (Acts 23:4 ULB)
  - *You should not insult God’s high priest!”*
- **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11 ULB)
  - *I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!”*
- **And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULB)
  - *“How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!”*

3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

- **Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?** (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)
  - *”You still rule the kingdom of Israel, don’t you?”*

## Simile

*This answers the question: What is a simile?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

### Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36 ULB)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves*, so be as wise *as serpents* and harmless *as doves*. (Matthew 10:16 ULB)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword*. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

### Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

## Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, *as a good soldier of Christ Jesus*. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULB)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

*for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day.* (Luke 17:24 ULB)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lightning flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1 If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
  - "See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves."
- **For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword***. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)
  - "For the word of God is living and active and *more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword*"

2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.
  - "See, I send you out *as chickens in the midst of wild dogs*,"
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
  - How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!
- **If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard**, (Matthew 17:20 ULB)
  - "If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed"

3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB)
  - "See, I send you out and people will want to harm you."
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
  - "How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!"

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Metaphor*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

## Synecdoche

*This answers the question: What does the word synecdoche mean?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

### Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

*My soul* exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul”, the part of herself that has emotions, to refer to her whole self.

*the Pharisees* said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful ...?”  
(Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

### Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that *my hands* had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the legs and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved.

### Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

- **My soul exalts the Lord.** (Luke 1:46 ULB)
  - "I exalt the Lord."
- **the Pharisees said to him** (Mark 2:24 ULB)
  - "a representative of the Pharisees said to him"
- **I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished** (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
  - "I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished"

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Metonymy*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies*

## Biblical Volume

*This answers the question: How can I translate the measures of volume that are in the Bible?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Decimal Numbers*

### Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain).

Type	Original Measure	Liters
Dry	omer	2 liters
Dry	ephah	22 liters
Dry	homer	220 liters
Dry	kor	220 liters
Dry	seah	7.7 liters
Dry	letheke	114.8 liters
Liquid	metrete	40 liters
Liquid	bath	22 liters
Liquid	hin	3.7 liters
Liquid	kab	1.23 liters
Liquid	log	0.31 liters

### Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.

### Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

### Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

- **For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah.** (Isaiah 5:10 ULB)

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

- "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one *bat*, and one *homer* of seed will yield only an *efa*."

2. Use the measurements given in the UDB. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

- "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only *twenty-two liters*, and *ten baskets* of seed will yield only *one basket*."
  - "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only *twenty-two liters* and *220 liters* of seed will yield only *twenty-two liters*."

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

- "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only six gallons, and *six and a half bushels* of seed will yield only twenty quarts."

4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

- "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only *one bath (six gallons)*, and *one homer (six and a half bushels)* of seed will yield only *an ephah (twenty quarts)*."

5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULB measurements in footnotes.

- "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters<sup>1</sup>, and 220 liters<sup>2</sup> of seed will yield only twenty-two liters<sup>2</sup>." The footnotes would look like:



- <sup>[1]</sup>one bath
- <sup>[2]</sup>one home
- <sup>[3]</sup>one ephah

### When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULB and UDB, add the word “measure.”

- **whenever anyone came to the grainery for *twenty measures* of grain, there were only *ten*, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out *fifty measures* of wine, there were only *twenty*.** (Haggai 2:16 ULB)

### Translation Strategies

1. Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
2. Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”
3. Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
4. Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

### Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

- **whenever anyone came to the grainery for *twenty measures* of grain, there were only *ten*, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out *fifty measures* of wine, there were only *twenty*.** (Haggai 2:16 ULB)

1. Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
  - “whenever anyone came to the grainery for *twenty* of grain, there were only *ten*, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out *fifty* of wine, there were only *twenty*.”
2. Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”
  - “whenever anyone came to the grainery for *twenty amounts* of grain, there were only *ten*, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out *fifty amounts* of wine, there were only *twenty*.”
3. Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
  - “whenever anyone came to the grainery for *twenty baskets* of grain, there were only *ten*, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out *fifty jars* of wine, there were only *twenty*.”
4. Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

- "whenever anyone came to the grainery for *twenty liters* of grain, there were only *ten liters*, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out *fifty liters* of wine, there were only *twenty liters*."

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Fractions*
- *Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit*

## How to Translate Names

*This answers the question: How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Translate Unknowns*

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

### Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. All names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this *Melchizedek*, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1ULB)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” simply to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” simply to tell us something about Melchizedek.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace. (Hebrews 7:2 ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

### Examples from the Bible

You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the *Amorites* (Joshua 24:11 ULB)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the the Living One who sees me.”

She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name *Moses* sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

*Saul* was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)

It came about in Iconium that *Paul* and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names *Saul* and *Paul* refer to the same person.

### Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name all of the time and write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

- **You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with the *Amorites*** (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
  - “You went over the *Jordan River* and came to the city of *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with *the tribe of the Amorites*”
- **Shortly after, some *Pharisees* came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *Herod* wants to kill you.”** (Luke 13:31 ULB)

- “Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *King Herod* wants to kill you.”

2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

- **She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”** (Exodus 2:11 ULB)
  - “She named him *Moses*, which sounds like ‘drawn out,’ and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.

- **she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*;** (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)
  - “she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Well of the One who sees me*;

4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text talks about that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.

For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
  - “a young man named *Paul*”<sup>1</sup> The footnote would look like:
    - ◇ <sup>[1]</sup>Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB)
  - “But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;”

5. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
  - “a young man named *Saul*”
- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB) \*  
 “But \_\_Saul\_\_, who is also called \_\_Paul\_\_, was filled with the Holy Spirit;” \* \*\*It came about in Iconium that \_\_Paul\_\_ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue\*\*  
 ([[en:bible:notes:act:14:01 | Acts 14:1 ULB)

- "It came about in Iconium that *Paul*<sup>1</sup> and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue"  
(Acts 14:1 ULB) The footnote would look like:
  - ◇ <sup>[1]</sup>This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Copy or Borrow Words*

## Numbers

*This answers the question: How do I translate numbers?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Translate Unknowns*

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words, such as “five” or as numerals, such as “5”. Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000) or “one hundred million” (100,000,000.) Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

### Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. Some are small, such as “five” (5) and “fifteen” (15). Others are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), twenty-two thousand (22,000) or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was *eighty-six* years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about *three thousand* men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULB)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

### Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

### Examples from the Bible

When Jared had lived *162* years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived *eight hundred* years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived *962* years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULB)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of *thousands of ten thousands*. (Genesis 24:60 ULB)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

### Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- **Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.** (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULB)

1. Write numbers using numerals.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one 1,000,000 talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities."

2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand* talents of gold, *one million* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. "

3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand (100,000)* talents of gold, *one million (1,000,000)* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

4. Combine words for large numbers.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand* talents of gold, *a thousand thousand* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)*, and bronze and iron in large quantities.



**Consistency**

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

**Consistency in the ULB and UDB**

The ULB (Unlocked Literal Bible) and the UDB (Unlocked Dynamic Bible) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals “130” instead of “one hundred thirty”).

When Adam had lived *130* years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived *eight hundred* years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived *930* years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULB)

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Ordinal Numbers*
- *Fractions*

## Ordinal Numbers

*This answers the question: What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Numbers*

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church *first* apostles, *second* prophets, *third* teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULB)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

### Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church *first* apostles, *second* prophets, *third* teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULB)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

### Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the

order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

### Examples from the Bible

The *first* lot went to Jehoiarib, the *second* to Jedaiah, the *third* to Harim, the *fourth* to Seorim, ... the *twenty-third* to Delaiah, and the *twenty-fourth* to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)

People tossed lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The *first* row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The *second* row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The *third* row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The *fourth* row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULB)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably be the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

### Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

- **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)
  - ”There were *twenty-four* lots. *One lot* went to Jehoiarib, *another* to Jedaiah, *another* to Harim,... *another* to Delaiah, *and the last* went to Maaziah.”
  - ”There were *twenty-four* lots. *One lot* went to Jehoiarib, *the next* to Jedaiah, *the next* to Harim,... *the next* to Delaiah, *and the last* went to Maaziah.”
- **A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became *four* rivers. The name of *the first* is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of *the second* river is Gihon. This one flows**

**throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of *the third* river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. *The fourth* river is the Euphrates.**(Genesis 2:10-14 ULB)

- "A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became *four* rivers. The name of *one* is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of *the next* river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of *the next* river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The *last* river is the Euphrates."

2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

- **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)

- "They cast *twenty-four* lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim, ... Delaiah, and Maaziah."

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Fractions*

## Symbolic Action

*This answers the question: What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Translate Unknowns*

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean “Yes” or turn their head from side to side to mean “No”. Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures.

Translators need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in their own culture, they need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

### Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. An action does not have to actually be performed; it may simply be referred to.

### Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

### Reason this is a translation issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In others cultures it means “Yes.”

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

### Examples from the Bible

Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet. (Luke 8:41 ULB)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I stand at the door and *knock*. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULB)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people want someone to welcome them into their home, they stand at the door and knock on it.

### Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.

- **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULB)
  - "Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him."
- **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULB)
  - "Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in."

2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

- **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41)
  - "Jairus showed Jesus great respect."
- **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20)
  - "Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in."

3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

- **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULB) - Since Jairus actually did this, we would not substitute an action from our own culture.
- **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULB) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

- “Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.”

## Translate Unknowns

*This answers the question: How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Sentences*

How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?

### Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The translationWords pages and the translationNotes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread or know what it is.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

### Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

### Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals* (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous *wolves*. (Matthew 7:15 ULB)



If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULB)

People may not know what *myrrh* is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made *great lights* (Psalm 136:7ULB)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins ... will be white like *snow* (Isaiah 1:18 ULB)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

## Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.

- **Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves.** (Matthew 7:15 ULB)
  - "Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but *are truly hungry and dangerous animals.*"
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
  - "We have here only five *loaves of baked grain seeds* and two fish"

2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

- **your sins ... will be white like snow** (Isaiah 1:18 ULB) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.
  - "your sins ... will be white like *milk*"
  - "your sins ... will be white like *the moon*"

3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

- **Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh. But he refused to drink it.** (Mark 15:23 ULB) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."
  - "Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *a medicine called myrrh*. But he refused to drink it."
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
  - "We have here only five loaves of *baked crushed seed bread* and two fish"

4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.

- **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)
  - "I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *wild dogs*"
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
  - "We have here only five *loaves of baked food* and two fish"

5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

- **to him who made great lights** (Psalm 136:7 ULB)
  - "to him who made *the sun and the moon*"

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Copy or Borrow Words*
- *How to Translate Names*